DENON®

AVR-X4200W
INTEGRATED NETWORK AV RECEIVER

Owner’s Manual

Upgrade **8**
Accessories **9**
Inserting the batteries 10
Operating range of the remote control unit 10
Features **11**
High quality sound 11
High performance 14
Easy operation 17
Part names and functions **18**
Front panel 18
Display 22
Rear panel 24
Remote control unit 28

Connections

Connecting speakers **32**
Speaker installation 32
Speaker connection 42
Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings 46
Connecting a TV **70**
Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) 71
Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) 72
Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector 73
Connecting a playback device **74**
Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV) 75
Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player 76
Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function 77
Connecting a video camcorder or game console 78
Connecting a turntable 79
Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port **80**
Connecting an FM/AM antenna **82**
Connecting to a home network (LAN) **84**
Wired LAN 84
Wireless LAN 85
Connecting an external control device **86**
REMOTE CONTROL jacks 86
TRIGGER OUT jacks 87
Connecting the power cord **88**

Playback

Basic operation **90**
Turning the power on 90
Selecting the input source 90
Adjusting the volume 91
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) 91
Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player 91

Playing an iPod **92**
Listening to music on an iPod 93
iPod Browse Mode settings 94
Performing repeat playback 96
Performing random playback 96
Playing a USB memory device **97**
Playing files stored on USB memory devices 98
Listening to music on a Bluetooth device **100**
Playing music from Bluetooth device 101
Pairing with other Bluetooth devices 103
Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device 104
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts **105**
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts 106
Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune) 107
Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode) 108
Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory) 108
Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory) 109
Listening to preset stations 109
Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name) 110
Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip) 111
Cancelling Preset Skip 112
Listening to Internet Radio **113**
Listening to Internet Radio 114
Playing the last played Internet Radio station 115
Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites 116
Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS **117**
Applying media sharing settings 118
Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS 119
Listening to Pandora® **121**
Listening to Pandora® 122
Creating a new station 124
Listening to an existing station 125
Listening to created radio stations at random 125
Giving feedback and managing stations 126
Sign Out 127
Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio **128**
Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio 129
Sign Out 130

AirPlay function **131**
- Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad 132
- Playing iTunes music with this unit 132
- Selecting multiple speakers (devices) 133
- Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit 133

Spotify Connect function **134**
- Playing Spotify music with this unit 134

Convenience functions **135**
- Performing repeat playback 136
- Performing random playback 136
- Registering to Favorites 137
- Playing back content added to the “Save to Favorites” 137
- Deleting content added to favorites 138
- Searching content with keywords (Text Search) 138
- Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow) 139
- Setting the Slideshow Interval 140
- Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust) 141
- Adjusting the tone (Tone) 142
- Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select) 143
- Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode) 144
- Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo) 145

Selecting a sound mode **146**
- Selecting a sound mode 147
- Direct playback 148
- Pure Direct playback 148
- Auto surround playback 149

HDMI control function **161**
- Setting procedure 161

Smart Menu function **162**

Sleep timer function **164**
- Using the sleep timer 165

Quick select plus function **166**
- Calling up the settings 167
- Changing the settings 168

Web control function **169**
- Controlling the unit from a web control 169

Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room) **171**
- Connecting ZONE 171
- Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 176

Settings

Menu map **178**
- Menu operations 181

Inputting characters **182**
- Using the keyboard screen 183
- Using the number buttons 184

Audio **185**
- Dialog Level Adjust 185
- Subwoofer Level Adjust 185
- Surround Parameter 186
- Restorer 192
- Audio Delay 193
- Volume 193
- Audyssey® 194
- Graphic EQ 198

Video **201**
- Picture Adjust 201
- HDMI Setup 203
- Output Settings 209
- Component Video Out 213
- On Screen Display 213
- TV Format 214

Inputs **215**
- Input Assign 215
- Source Rename 217
- Hide Sources 218
- Source Level 218
- Input Select 219

Speakers **220**

Audyssey® Setup **220**
- Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup) 222
- Error messages 228
- Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings 230

Manual Setup **231**
- Amp Assign 231
- Speaker Config. 237
- Distances 242
- Levels 243
- Crossovers 244
- Bass 245
- Front Speaker 246
- 2ch Playback 246

Network **249**
- Information 249
- Connection 249
- Wi-Fi Setup 250
- Settings 253
- Network Control 255
- Friendly Name 255
- Diagnostics 256
- Maintenance Mode 257

General **258**
- Language 258
- ECO 258
- ZONE2 Setup/ZONE3 Setup 261
- Zone Rename 263
- Quick Select Names 263
- Trigger Out 1/Trigger Out 2 264
- Front Display 264
- Firmware 266
- Information 268
- Usage Data 269
- Setup Lock 270

Operating external devices with the remote control unit **271**
- Registering preset codes 272
- Operating devices 275
- Initializing registered preset codes 278
- Specifying the operating zone with the remote control 278
- Resetting the remote control unit 278

Tips

Tips 280
Troubleshooting 282
Resetting factory settings 300

Appendix

About HDMI 301
Video conversion function 304
Playing back a USB memory devices 306
Playing back a Bluetooth device 307
Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS 308
Playing back Internet Radio 309
Personal memory plus function 309
Last function memory 309
Sound modes and channel output 310
Sound modes and surround parameters 312
Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes 316
Explanation of terms 320
Trademark information 330
Specifications 333
Index 339
License 342

Upgrade

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

The text marked with this symbol that will enable after the upgrade of the Auro-3D.

You can experience the best performance of Auro-3D if you install Front Height and Surround Height in addition to standard 5.1-channel. The “Setup Assistant” will lead you to this setting.
You can use Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup instead of Surround Height speakers for Auro-3D playback.
The AVR also can play Auro-3D using standard 5.1-channel and Front Height speakers. If you install any height speakers instead of Surround Height speakers and Rear Height speakers, you can set the speaker configuration in setup menu.

Auro-3D

Features

High quality sound 13

Connecting speakers

Speaker installation 34, 37
Layout including height speakers and top speakers 41
Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings 47
Auro-3D 9.1-channel system 61

Selecting a sound mode

Description of sound mode types Auro-3D sound mode 152
Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal 159

Audio

Auro-Matic 3D Preset 189
Auro-Matic 3D Strength 189

Inputs

Decode Mode 219

Manual Setup

Amp Assign 235
Speaker Config. 241

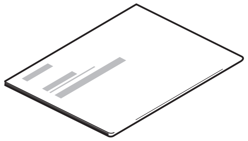
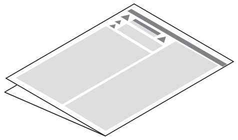
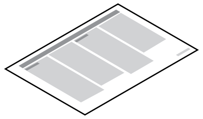
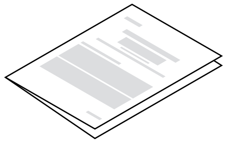
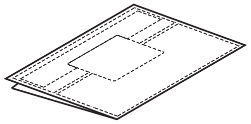
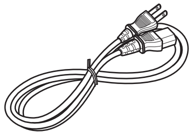
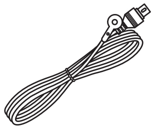
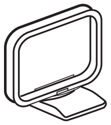
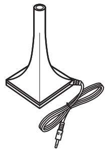
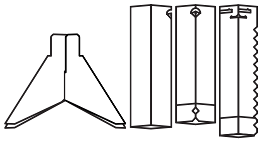
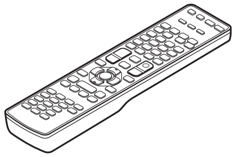
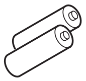
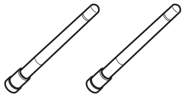
Appendix

Sound modes and channel output 311
Sound mode and surround parameters 314
Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes 318
Explanation of terms 321
Trademark information 332

Thank you for purchasing this Denon product.
To ensure proper operation, please read this owner’s manual carefully before using the product.
After reading this manual, be sure to keep it for future reference.

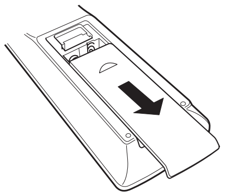
Accessories

Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

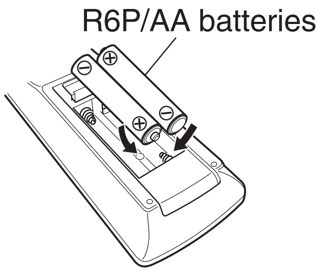
 Quick Start Guide	 Safety Instructions	 Notes on radio	 Warranty (for North America model only)	 Cable labels
 Power cord	 FM indoor antenna	 AM loop antenna	 Sound calibration microphone (ACM1HB)	 Sound calibration microphone stand
 Remote control unit (RC-1193)	 R6P/AA batteries	 External antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity		

Inserting the batteries

1 **Slide the rear cover off the remote control unit in the arrow direction.**



2 **Insert two batteries correctly into the battery compartment as indicated.**



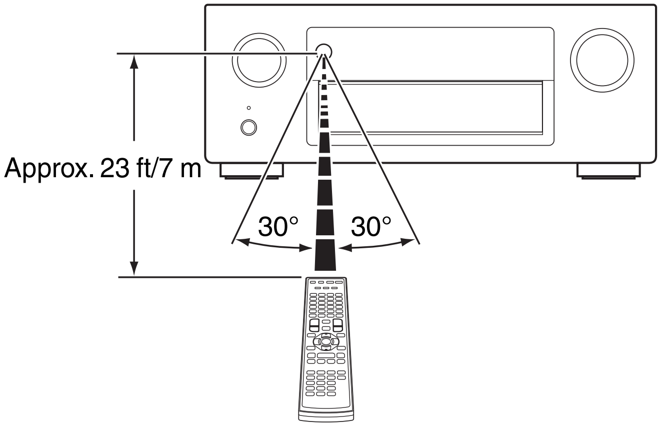
3 **Put the rear cover back on.**

NOTE

- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.

Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.



Features

High quality sound

- **With discrete circuit technology, the power amplifier provides identical quality for all 7-channels (165 Watts x 7-channels)**
  For optimum realism and stunning dynamic range, the power amplifier section features discrete power devices (not integrated circuitry).
  By using high current, high power discrete power devices, the amplifier is able to easily drive high quality speakers.

- **Dolby Atmos (☞ p. 322)**
  This unit is equipped with a decoder that supports Dolby Atmos audio format. The placement or movement of sound is accurately reproduced by the addition of overhead speakers, enabling you to experience an incredibly natural and realistic surround sound field.

- **DTS:X**
  This unit is equipped with the DTS:X decoder technology. DTS:X brings the home theater experience to new heights with its immersive object based audio technology which removes the bounds of channels. The flexibility of objects allows for sound to be scaled large or small and moved around the room with greater accuracy than ever before leading to a richer immersive audio experience.

- **Audyssey DSX® (☞ p. 197)**
  This unit is equipped with Audyssey DSX® processor. By connecting front height speakers to this unit and playing back with Audyssey DSX® processing you can experience a more vertically expansive front soundstage. By connecting two front wide speakers, you can experience a wider and more expanded front soundstage.

- **Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment) (☞ p. 197)**
  Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

- **Discrete subwoofers and Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ (☞ p. 221)**
  The unit has two subwoofer output capability and can adjust the level and delay for each subwoofer individually.
  Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together for improved deep bass response and detail.

- **Denon’s unique high quality playback technology “Denon Link HD”** (☞ p. 329)

  This unit is equipped with our exclusive “Denon Link HD” technology. When connected to a Denon disc player that has Denon Link HD, the sound localization becomes more precise, with increased detail and definition. The system works by carrying the critical clock timing signals via the dedicated Denon Link HD connection, minimizing the jitter caused by conventional digital connections. This effect can be applied to an audio source of any media from a Blu-ray Disc player.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

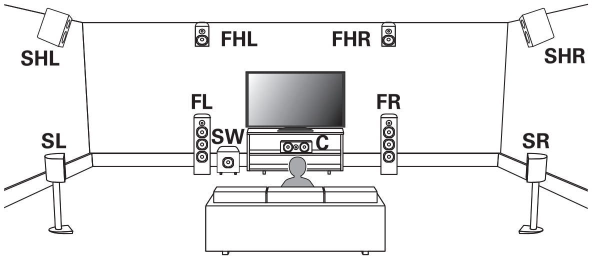
- **Auro-3D**

  This unit is equipped with an Auro-3D decoder.

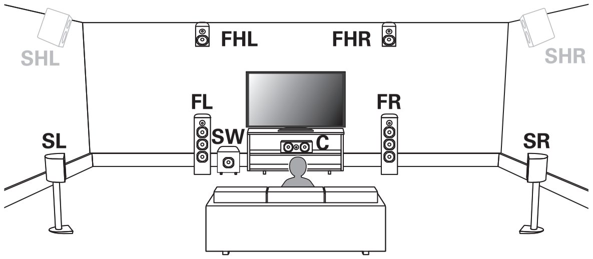
  With Auro-3D, Front Height (FHL+FHR) and Surround Height (SHL+SHR) are added to a conventional 5.1-channel system to achieve a natural and realistic sound field that is three-dimensional and fully immersive.

After performing the Auro-3D upgrade you will be able to fully enjoy Auro-3D playback if you properly place the speakers for Auro-3D.

■Auro-3D playback



■Dolby Atmos playback

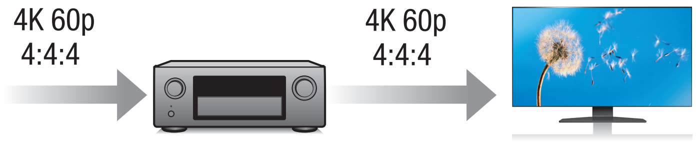


- Auro-3D does not support a Dolby Atmos configuration using Top Front, Top Middle, Top Rear, or any Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
  If you are using these speakers and want to take full advantage of the Auro-3D Upgrade, you need to relocate them to Front Height and Surround Height speaker locations as shown above.
  But it is possible to support both an Auro-3D and Dolby Atmos by adding Front Height and Rear Height speakers* to a 5.1 configuration.

* For an optimum Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are strongly recommended.

High performance

- **4K 60Hz input/output supported**

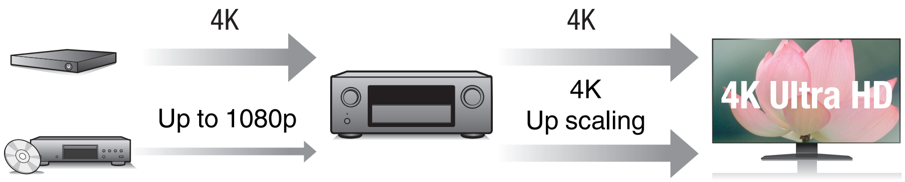


When 4K Ultra HD (High Definition) is used, an input/output speed of 60 frames per second (60p) is achieved for video signals. When connected to 4K Ultra HD and 60p video signal input compatible TV, you can enjoy the sense of realism only available from high-definition images, even when viewing fast-moving video.
This unit also supports image processing for 4K 60p, 4:4:4 and 24-bit videos. By processing the video at the original resolution, this unit lets you enjoy flawless, high-definition picture quality.

- **HDCP 2.2**

This unit is compatible with HDCP 2.2 copyright protection standard.

- **Digital video processor upscales analog video signals (SD resolution) to HD (720p/1080p) and 4K (☞ p. 211)**

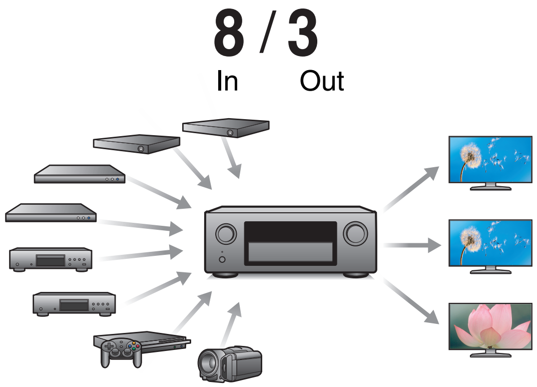


This unit is equipped with a 4K video upscaling function that allows analog video or SD (Standard Definition) video to be output via HDMI at 4K (3840 × 2160 pixels) resolution. This function enables the device to be connected to a TV using a single HDMI cable, and produces high definition images for any video source.

- **Equipped with HDMI ZONE2 output (☞ p. 171)**

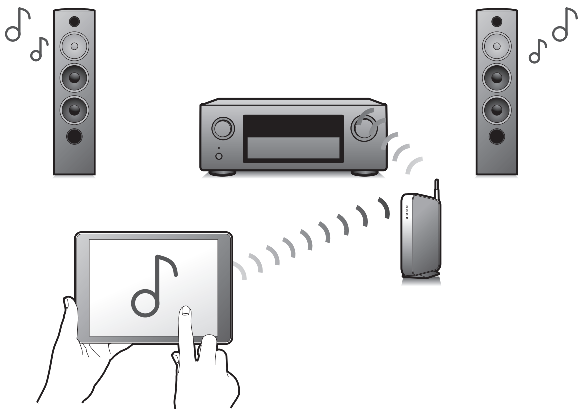
The ZONE2 multi-room output includes an HDMI output that lets you enjoy a different A/V source in that room, with another program playing in the main room.

- **HDMI connections enable connection to various digital AV devices (8 inputs, 3 outputs)**



For connection to a broad range of digital sources, this unit features 8 HDMI inputs, including 1 on the front panel that lets you quickly and conveniently connect a camcorder, game console or other HDMI-equipped device. There are dual HDMI outputs for the main room, and a third HDMI output for another room.

- **The device is equipped with a AirPlay® function in addition to network functions such as Internet radio etc. (☞ p. 131)**



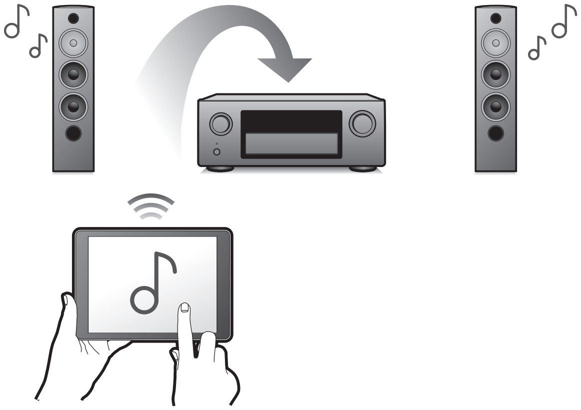
You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet Radio, playing audio files stored on your PC, and displaying photographs stored on your PC on our television.

This unit also supports Apple AirPlay which lets you stream your music library from an iPhone®, iPad®, iPod touch® or iTunes®.

- **Playback of DSD and FLAC files via USB and networks**

This unit supports the playback of high resolution audio formats such as DSD (2.8 MHz) and FLAC 192 kHz files. It provides high quality playback of high resolution files.

- **Wireless connection with Bluetooth devices can be carried out easily (☞ p. 100)**



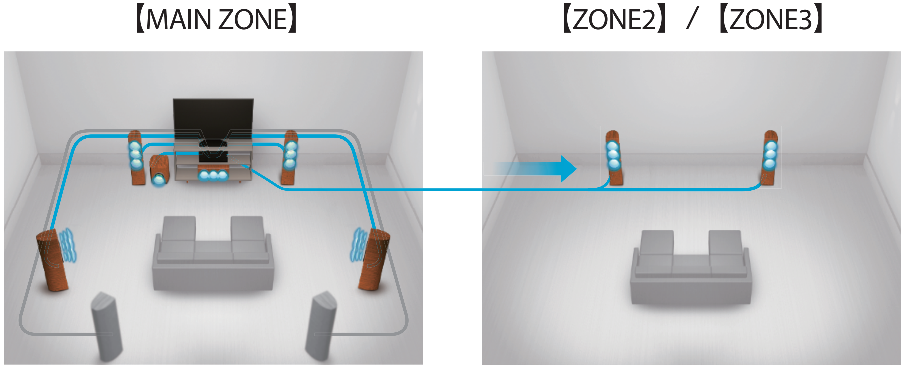
You can enjoy music simply by connecting wirelessly with your smartphone, tablet, PC, etc.

- **Compatible with the “Denon 2015 AVR Remote”* for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone or Android™ devices (Google, Amazon Kindle Fire)**

“Denon 2015 AVR Remote” is application software that allows you to perform basic operations with an iPad, iPhone, Android smartphone or Android tablet such as turning the unit ON/OFF, controlling the volume, and switching the source.

* Download the appropriate “Denon 2015 AVR Remote” for your iOS or Android devices. This unit needs to be connected to the same LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN) network that the iPhone or iPod touch is connected to.

- **Multi-Room audio (☞ p. 145)**



You can select and play back the respective inputs in MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

In addition, when the All Zone Stereo function is used, the music being played back in MAIN ZONE can be enjoyed in all the zones at the same time. This is useful when you want to let the BGM propagate throughout the whole house.

- **Energy-saving design**

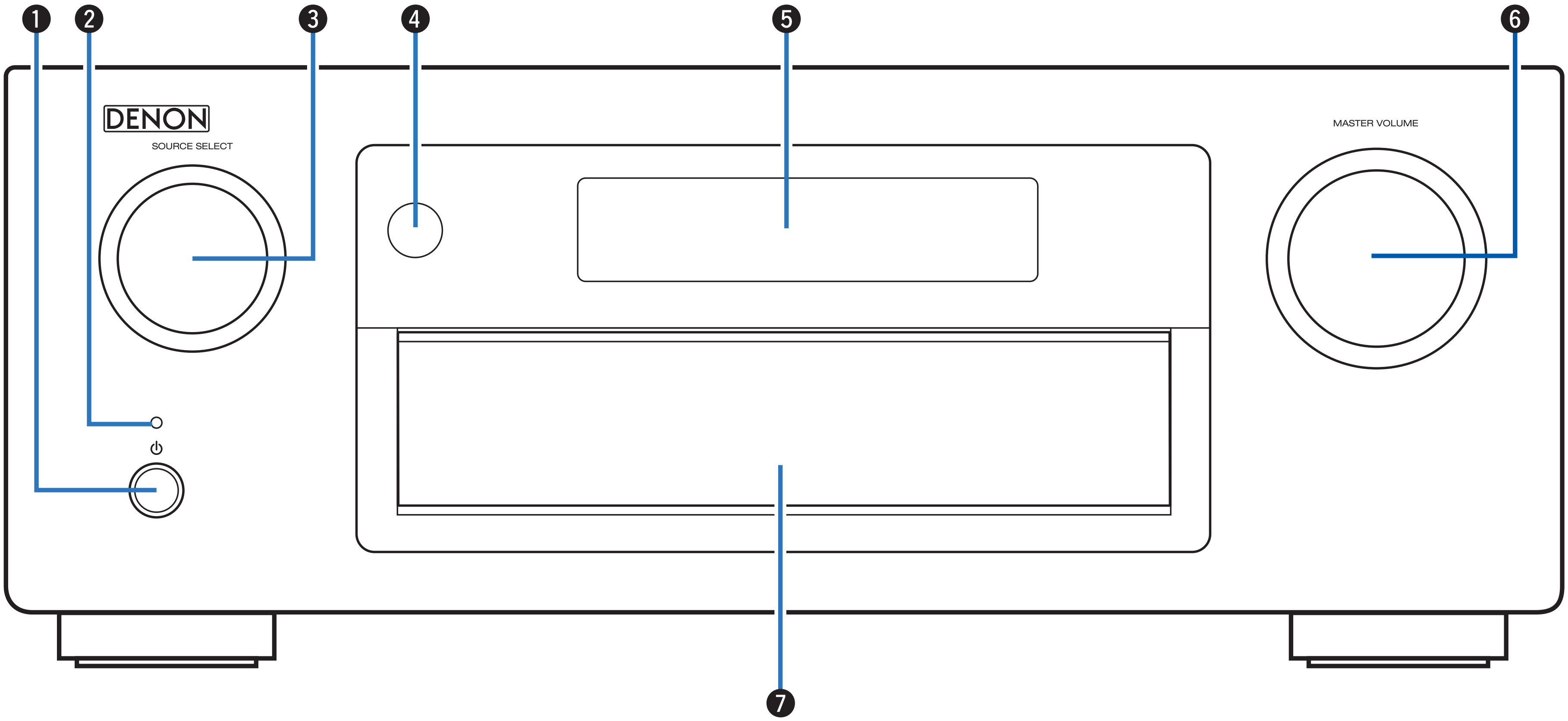
This unit is equipped with an ECO Mode function that allows you to enjoy music and movies while reducing the power consumption during use, and also an auto-standby function that automatically turns off the power supply when the unit is not in use. This helps reduce unnecessary power use.

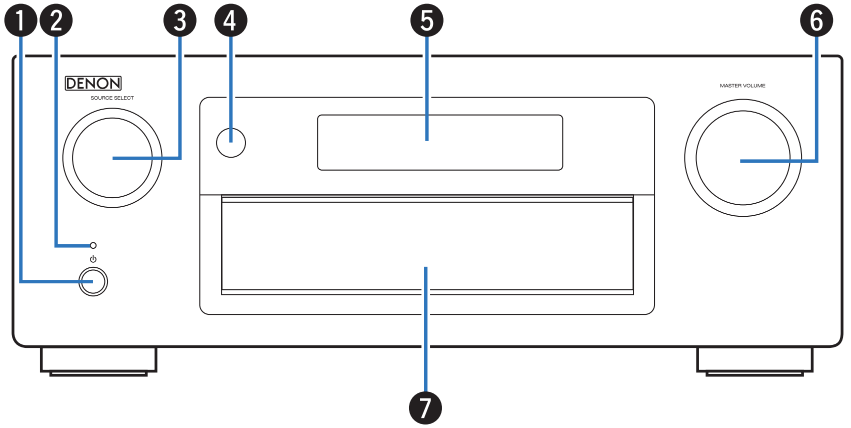
Easy operation

- **“Setup Assistant” provides easy-to-follow setup instructions**
  First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.
- **Easy to use Graphical User Interface**
  This unit is equipped with a Graphical User Interface for improved operability.

Part names and functions

Front panel


❶
❷
❸
❹
❺
❻
❼
DENON
SOURCE SELECT
MASTER VOLUME



❶ **Power operation button (⏻)**

Used to turn the power of the MAIN ZONE (room where this unit is located) on/off (standby). (☞ p. 90)

❷ **Power indicator**

This is lit as follows according to the power status:

- White: Power on
- Off: Normal standby
- Red:
  - When “HDMI Control” is set to “On” (☞ p. 205)
  - When “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “On” (☞ p. 206)
  - When “Network Control” is set to “Always On” (☞ p. 255)

❸ **SOURCE SELECT knob**

This selects the input source. (☞ p. 90)

❹ **Remote control sensor**

This receives signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 10)

❺ **Display**

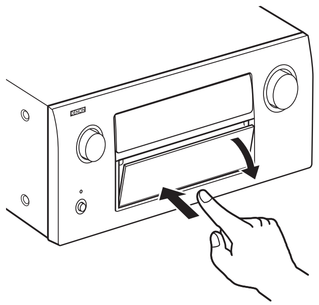
This displays various pieces of information. (☞ p. 22)

❻ **MASTER VOLUME knob**

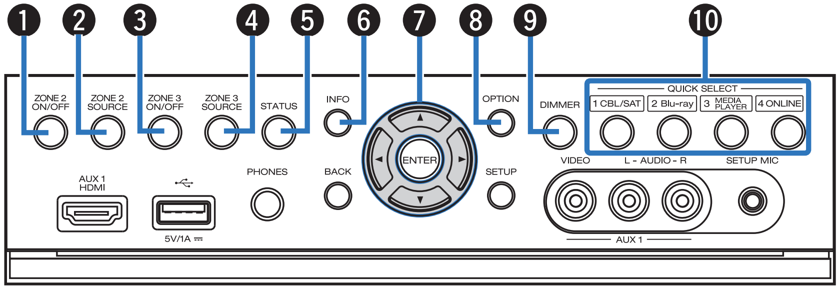
This adjusts the volume level. (☞ p. 91)

❼ **Door**

When you are using buttons and/or connectors behind the door, press the bottom of the door to open it. Be careful not to catch your fingers when closing the door.



With the door open



①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
⑨
⑩
ZONE 2 ON/OFF
ZONE 2 SOURCE
ZONE 3 ON/OFF
ZONE 3 SOURCE
STATUS
INFO
OPTION
DIMMER
QUICK SELECT
1 CBL/SAT
2 Blu-ray
3 MEDIA PLAYER
4 ONLINE
ENTER
AUX 1 HDMI
5V/1A
PHONES
BACK
SETUP
VIDEO
L - AUDIO - R
SETUP MIC
AUX 1

① **ZONE2 ON/OFF button**
This turns the power of ZONE2 (separate room) on/off. (☞ p. 176)

② **ZONE2 SOURCE button**
This selects the input source for ZONE2. (☞ p. 176)

③ **ZONE3 ON/OFF button**
This turns the power of ZONE3 (separate room) on/off. (☞ p. 176)

④ **ZONE3 SOURCE button**
This selects the input source for ZONE3. (☞ p. 176)

⑤ **STATUS button**
Each press of this switches the status information that is shown on the display.

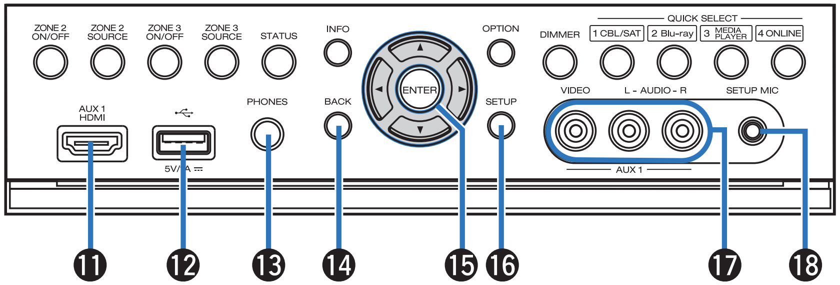
⑥ **Information button (INFO)**
This displays the status information on the TV screen. (☞ p. 269)

⑦ **Cursor buttons (△▽◁ ▷)**
These select items.

⑧ **OPTION button**
This displays the option menu on the TV screen.

⑨ **DIMMER button**
Each press of this switches the brightness of the display. (☞ p. 264)

⑩ **QUICK SELECT buttons**
With a single press of any of these buttons, you can call up various settings you've registered to each button such as the input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (☞ p. 166)


ZONE 2 ON/OFF
ZONE 2 SOURCE
ZONE 3 ON/OFF
ZONE 3 SOURCE
STATUS
INFO
ENTER
OPTION
DIMMER
QUICK SELECT
1 CBL/SAT
2 Blu-ray
3 MEDIA PLAYER
4 ONLINE
AUX 1 HDMI
5V/1A
PHONES
BACK
SETUP
VIDEO
L - AUDIO - R
SETUP MIC
AUX 1
⑪
⑫
⑬
⑭
⑮
⑯
⑰
⑱

⑪ AUX1 HDMI connector

This is used to connect HDMI output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. (☞ p. 78)

⑫ USB port (•⇠)

This is used to connect USB storages (such as USB memory devices) and the USB cable supplied with iPod. (☞ p. 80)

⑬ Headphones jack (PHONES)

This is used to connect headphones.

When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers or from the PRE OUT connectors.

NOTE

- To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

⑭ BACK button

This returns to the previous screen.

⑮ ENTER button

This determines the selection.

⑯ SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 181)

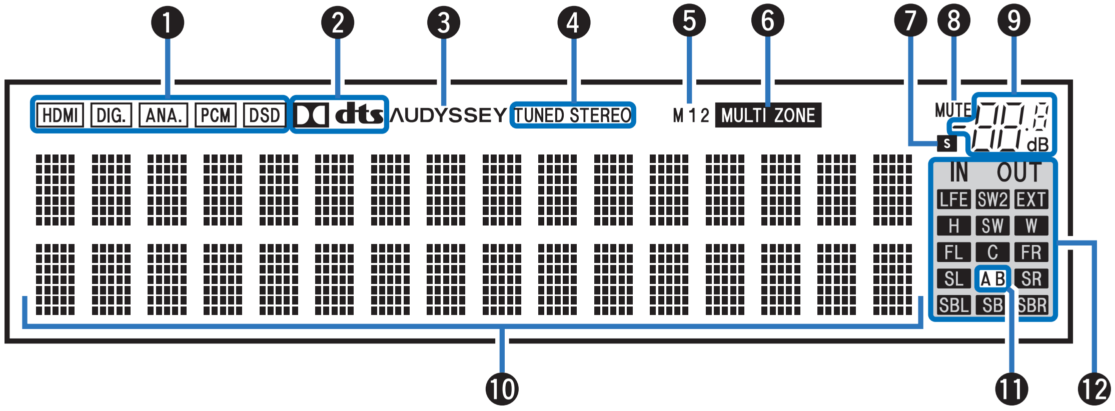
⑰ AUX1 INPUT connector

Used to connect analog output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. (☞ p. 78)

⑱ SETUP MIC jack

This is used to connect the supplied Sound calibration microphone. (☞ p. 223)

Display


❶
❷
❸
❹
❺
❻
❼
❽
❾
❿
⓫
⓬
HDMI
DIG.
ANA.
PCM
DSD
dts
AUDYSSEY
TUNED STEREO
M 1 2
MULTI ZONE
MUTE
S
dB
IN OUT
LFE SW2 EXT
H SW W
FL C FR
SL A B SR
SBL SB SBR

❶ **Input signal indicators**

The respective indicator will light corresponding to the input signal. (☞ p. 219)

❷ **Decoder indicators**

These light when Dolby or DTS signals are input or when the Dolby or DTS decoder is running.

❸ **Audyssey® indicator**

This lights when “MultEQ® XT32”, “Dynamic EQ”, “Dynamic Volume”, “Audyssey DSX®” or “Audyssey LFC™” has been set up. (☞ p. 194)

❹ **Tuner reception mode indicators**

These light up according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to “Tuner”.

TUNED: Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

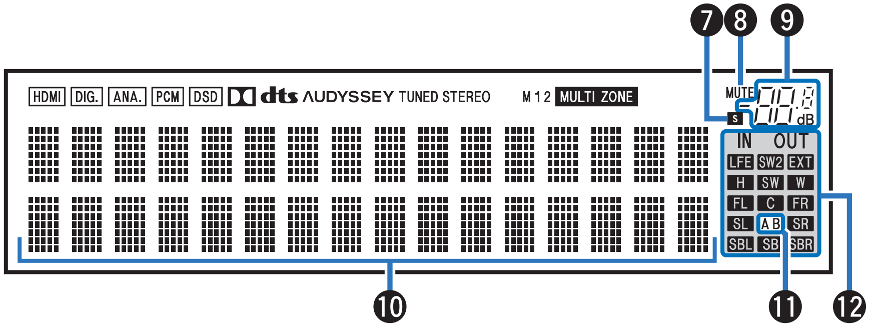
STEREO: Lights up when receiving FM stereo broadcasts.

❺ **Monitor output indicator**

These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting. When set to “Auto(Dual)”, the indicators light according to connection status.

❻ **MULTI ZONE indicator**

This lights up when ZONE2 or ZONE3 (separate room) power is turned on. (☞ p. 176)


⑦ ⑧ ⑨
HDMI DIG. ANA. PCM DSD dts AUDYSSEY TUNED STEREO M 1 2 MULTI ZONE
MUTE
S
dB
IN OUT
LFE SW2 EXT
H SW W
FL C FR
SL A B SR
SBL SB SBR
⑩ ⑪ ⑫

⑦ Sleep timer indicator

This lights when the sleep mode is selected. (☞ p. 164)

⑧ MUTE indicator

This blinks while the sound is muted. (☞ p. 91)

⑨ Volume indicator

⑩ Information display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

⑪ Front speaker indicator

This lights according to the setting of the front A and B speakers.

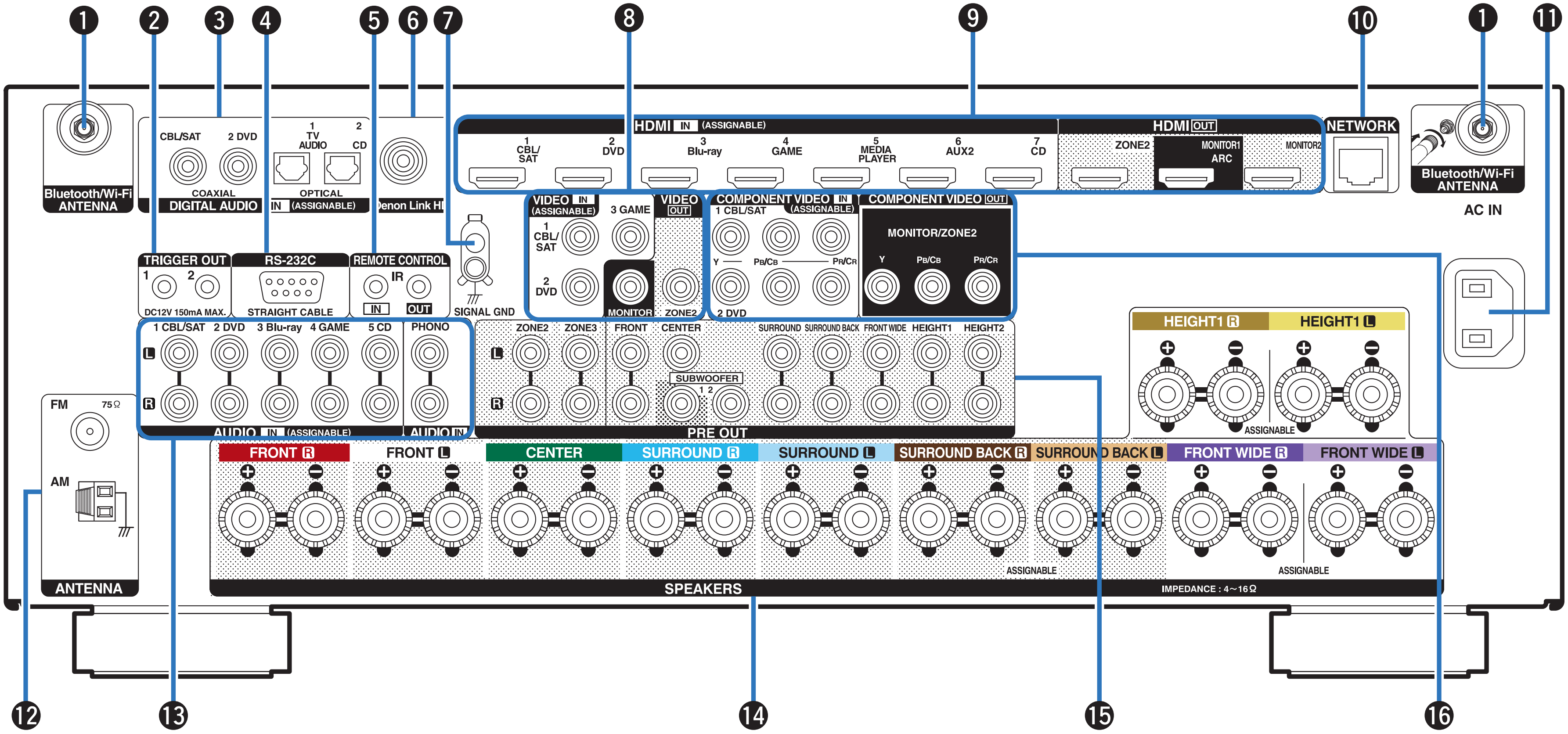
⑫ Input/output signal channel indicators

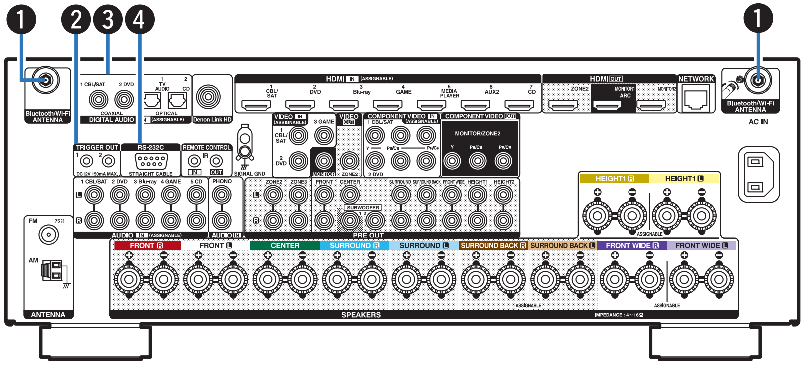
The channel for input/output signals is displayed according to the setting configured for “Channel Indicators”. (☞ p. 265)

- When “Channel Indicators” is set to “Output” (Default)
  These light when audio signals are being output from the speakers.
- When “Channel Indicators” is set to “Input”
  These light corresponding to the channels that include the input signals.

When playing HD Audio sources, the EXT indicator lights when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back, front height, front wide or LFE channel) is input.

Rear panel

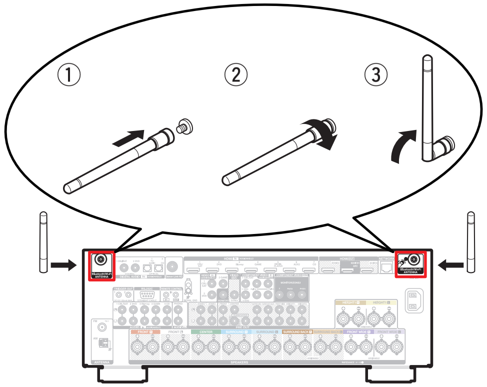

❶
❷
❸
❹
❺
❻
❼
❽
❾
❿
⓫
⓬
⓭
⓮
⓯
⓰
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi ANTENNA
CBL/SAT
2 DVD
COAXIAL
DIGITAL AUDIO
1 TV AUDIO
2 CD
OPTICAL
IN (ASSIGNABLE)
Denon Link HD
TRIGGER OUT
1 2
DC12V 150mA MAX.
RS-232C
STRAIGHT CABLE
REMOTE CONTROL
IR
IN
OUT
SIGNAL GND
HDMI IN (ASSIGNABLE)
1 CBL/SAT
2 DVD
3 Blu-ray
4 GAME
5 MEDIA PLAYER
6 AUX2
7 CD
HDMI OUT
ZONE2
MONITOR1 ARC
MONITOR2
NETWORK
AC IN
VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
1 CBL/SAT
2 DVD
3 GAME
MONITOR
VIDEO OUT
ZONE2
COMPONENT VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
1 CBL/SAT
2 DVD
Y
PB/CB
PR/CR
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
MONITOR/ZONE2
FM 75Ω
AM
ANTENNA
L
R
1 CBL/SAT
2 DVD
3 Blu-ray
4 GAME
5 CD
PHONO
AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
AUDIO IN
ZONE2
ZONE3
FRONT
CENTER
SUBWOOFER 1 2
SURROUND
SURROUND BACK
FRONT WIDE
HEIGHT1
HEIGHT2
PRE OUT
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
ASSIGNABLE
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
ASSIGNABLE
ASSIGNABLE
SPEAKERS
IMPEDANCE : 4~16Ω



❶ Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors

Used to connect the included external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity when connecting to a network via wireless LAN, or when connecting to a handheld device via Bluetooth. (☞ p. 85)

① Place the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity evenly over the screw terminal of rear.
② Turn clockwise until the antennas is fully connected.
③ Rotate the antenna upwards for best reception.



❷ TRIGGER OUT jacks

Used to connect devices equipped with the trigger function. (☞ p. 87)

❸ Digital audio connectors (DIGITAL AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with digital audio connectors.

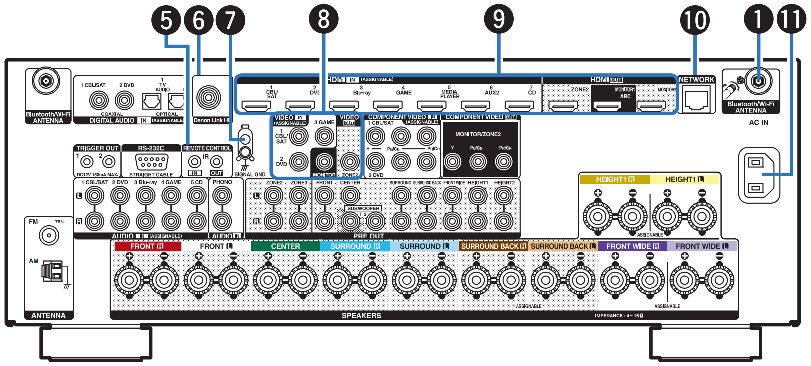
- “Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 72)
- “Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” (☞ p. 73)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 75)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 76)

❹ RS-232C connector

Used to connect home automation controller devices fitted with RS-232C connectors. Consult the owner’s manual of the home automation controller for more information about serial control of this unit.

Perform the operation below beforehand.

① Turn on the power of this unit.
② Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
③ Check that the unit is in the standby mode.



❺ **REMOTE CONTROL jacks**

Used to connect infrared receivers/transmitters in order to operate this unit and external devices from a different room. (☞ p. 86)

❻ **Denon Link HD connector**

Used to connect a Denon Link HD compatible Blu-ray Disc player. (☞ p. 77)

❼ **SIGNAL GND terminal**

Used to connect a ground wire for the turntable. (☞ p. 79)

❽ **Video connectors (VIDEO)**

Used to connect devices equipped with video connectors.

- “Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” (☞ p. 73)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 75)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 76)

❾ **HDMI connectors**

Used to connect devices equipped with HDMI connectors.

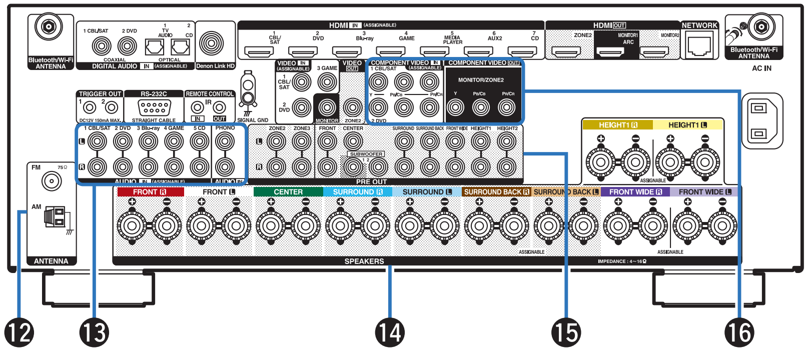
- “Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 71)
- “Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 72)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 75)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 76)

❿ **NETWORK connector**

Used to connect to a LAN cable when connecting to a wired LAN network. (☞ p. 84)

⓫ **AC inlet (AC IN)**

Used to connect the power cord. (☞ p. 88)



⑫ FM/AM antenna terminals (ANTENNA)

Used to connect FM antennas and AM loop antennas. (☞ p. 82)

⑬ Analog audio connectors (AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with analog audio connectors.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 75)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 76)

⑭ Speaker terminals (SPEAKERS)

Used to connect speakers. (☞ p. 42)

⑮ PRE OUT connectors

Used to connect a subwoofer with built-in amplifier or an external power amplifier.

- “Connecting the subwoofer” (☞ p. 43)
- “Connecting ZONE” (☞ p. 171)

⑯ Component video connectors (COMPONENT VIDEO)

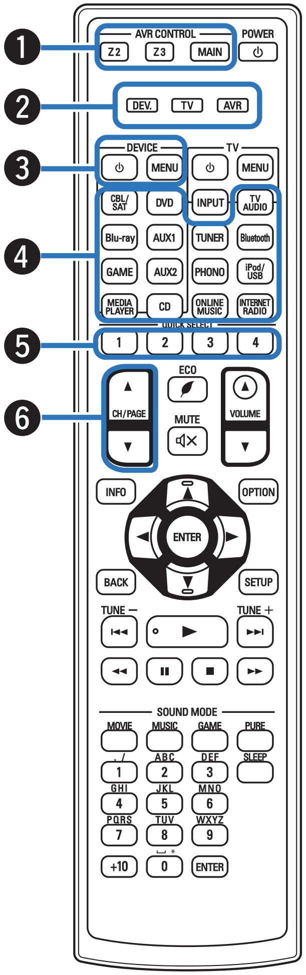
Used to connect devices equipped with component video connectors.

- “Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” (☞ p. 73)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 75)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 76)

NOTE

- Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

Remote control unit


❶
❷
❸
❹
❺
❻
AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
TV
MENU
MENU
CBL/SAT
DVD
INPUT
TV AUDIO
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
1
2
3
4
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
ABC
DEF
SLEEP
GHI
JKL
MNO
PQRS
TUV
WXYZ
+10
0
ENTER

❶ AVR operation buttons (AVR CONTROL MAIN, Z2, Z3)

These switch the zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3) that is operated through the remote control unit.

- "Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3" (☞ p. 176)
- "Menu operations" (☞ p. 181)

❷ Operation mode indicators

The "AVR" operation mode indicator lights when the unit is being operated.

The "DEV." indicator lights when an external device is being operated.

The "TV" indicator lights when the TV is being operated.

❸ Device operation buttons (DEVICE ⏻ / DEVICE MENU)

These turn the power of external devices on/off and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons. (☞ p. 272)

❹ Input source select buttons

These select the input source.

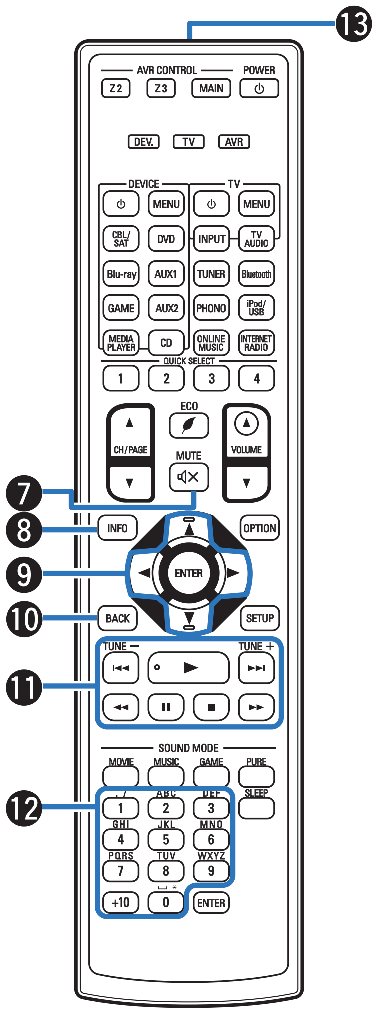
- "Selecting the input source" (☞ p. 90)
- "Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3" (☞ p. 176)

❺ QUICK SELECT buttons (1 – 4)

These call up settings registered to each button, such as input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (☞ p. 166)

❻ Channel/page search buttons (CH/PAGE ▲▼)

These select radio stations registered to presets or switch pages. (☞ p. 109)


⑬
AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
TV
MENU
MENU
CBL/SAT
DVD
INPUT
TV AUDIO
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
1
2
3
4
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
⑦
⑧
INFO
OPTION
⑨
ENTER
⑩
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
⑪
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
SLEEP
⑫
ABC
DEF
GHI
JKL
MNO
PQRS
TUV
WXYZ
+10
0
ENTER

⑦ MUTE button (🔇)

This mutes the output audio.

- "Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)" (☞ p. 91)
- "Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2/ZONE3)" (☞ p. 177)

⑧ Information button (INFO)

This displays the status information on the TV screen. (☞ p. 269)

⑨ Cursor buttons (△▽◁ ▷)

These select items.

⑩ BACK button

This returns to the previous screen.

⑪ System buttons

These perform playback related operations.

Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, –)

These select either FM broadcast or AM broadcast. (☞ p. 106)

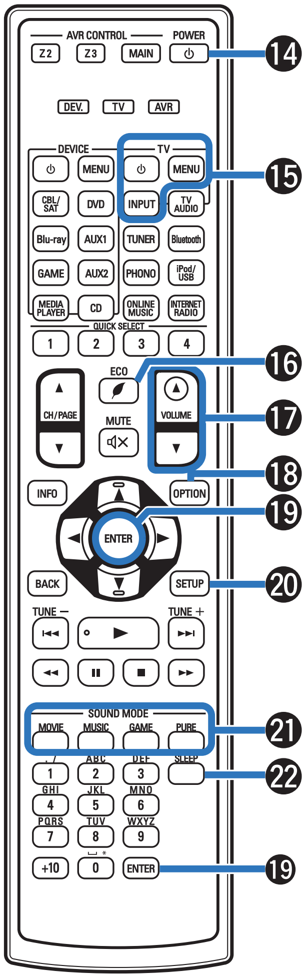
⑫ Number / Character buttons

These enter letters or numbers into the unit.

- "Listening to FM/AM broadcasts" (☞ p. 106)
- "Using the number buttons" (☞ p. 184)

⑬ Remote control signal transmitter

This transmits signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 10)


AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
TV
MENU
INPUT
TV AUDIO
CBL/SAT
DVD
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
1
2
3
4
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
ABC
DEF
SLEEP
GHI
JKL
MNO
PQRS
TUV
WXYZ
+10
0
ENTER
⑭
⑮
⑯
⑰
⑱
⑲
⑳
㉑
㉒
⑲

⑭ POWER button (⏻)

This turns the power on/off.

- "Turning the power on" (☞ p. 90)
- "Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3" (☞ p. 176)

⑮ TV operation buttons (TV ⏻ / TV MENU / TV INPUT)

These turn the TV power on/off, switch the TV input and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons. (☞ p. 276)

⑯ ECO Mode button (🍃)

This switches to ECO Mode. (☞ p. 258)

⑰ VOLUME buttons (▲▼)

These adjust the volume level.

- "Adjusting the volume" (☞ p. 91)
- "Adjusting the volume (ZONE2/ZONE3)" (☞ p. 177)

⑱ OPTION button

This displays the option menu on the TV screen.

⑲ ENTER button

This determines the selection.

⑳ SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 181)

㉑ SOUND MODE buttons

These select the sound mode. (☞ p. 146)

㉒ SLEEP button

This sets the sleep timer. (☞ p. 164)

Contents

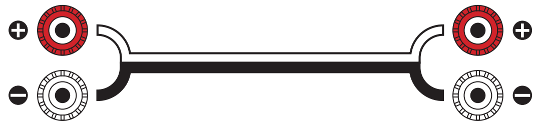
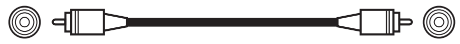
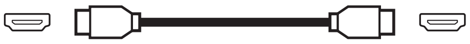
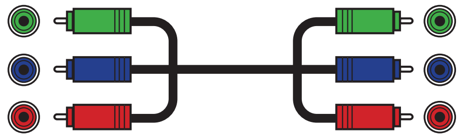
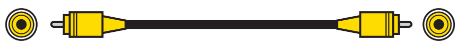
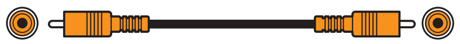
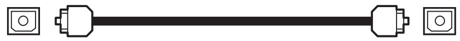
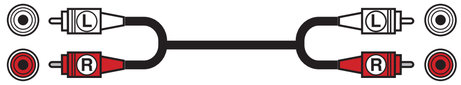
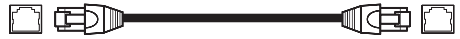
Connecting speakers 32
Connecting a TV 70
Connecting a playback device 74
Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port 80
Connecting an FM/AM antenna 82
Connecting to a home network (LAN) 84
Connecting an external control device 86
Connecting the power cord 88

NOTE

- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the “Setup Assistant” is running, follow the instructions in the “Setup Assistant” (page 9 in the separate “Quick Start Guide”) screen for making connections. (During “Setup Assistant” operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

Cables used for connections

Provide necessary cables according to the devices you want to connect.

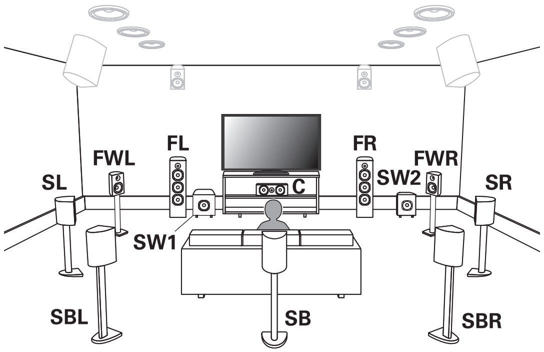
Speaker cable	
Subwoofer cable	
HDMI cable	
Component video cable	
Video cable	
Coaxial digital cable	
Optical cable	
Audio cable	
LAN cable	

Connecting speakers

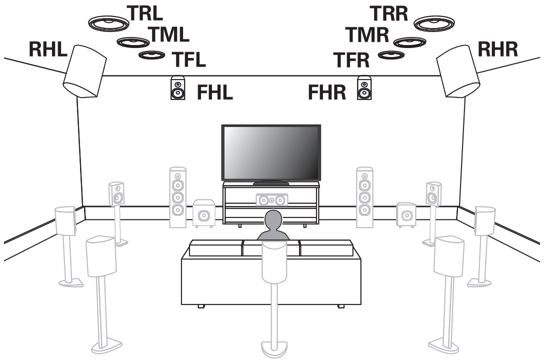
Install speakers and connect them to this unit. (“Speaker installation” (☞ p. 32), “Speaker connection” (☞ p. 42))

Speaker installation

Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room.
Speaker installation is explained using this example of a typical installation.

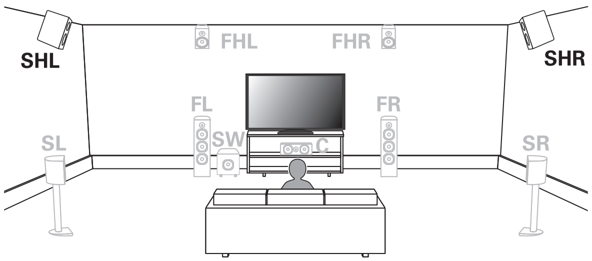


FL/FR (Front speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position. The distance between each speaker and your TV should also be the same.
C (Center speaker)**:**	Place the CENTER speaker in between the front speakers and above or below your TV.
SL/SR (Surround speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND left and right speakers an equal distance to the left and right sides of the main listening position. If you don’t have surround back speakers, move the surround speakers slightly behind your listening position.
SBL/SBR (Surround back speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND BACK left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position and directly behind the main listening position. When using a single surround back speaker (SB), place it directly behind the listening position.
FWL/FWR (Front wide speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT WIDE left and right speakers outside of the front left and right speakers so that there is an equal distance between all front speakers.
SW 1/2 (Subwoofer) **:**	Place the SUBWOOFER at a convenient location near the front speakers. If you have two subwoofers, place them asymmetrically across the front of your room.



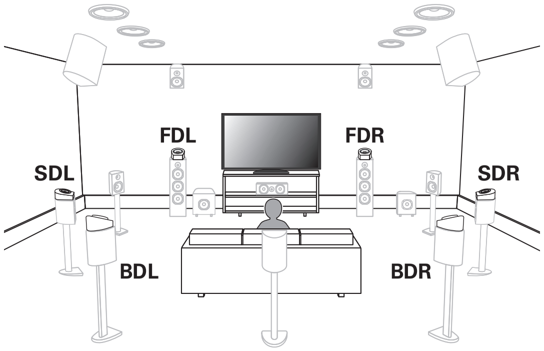
FHL/FHR (Front height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the front speakers. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.
TFL/TFR (Top front speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP FRONT left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly in front of your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
TML/TMR (Top middle speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP MIDDLE left and right speakers directly above the main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
TRL/TRR (Top rear speaker left/right)**:**	Mount the TOP REAR left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly behind your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.
RHL/RHR (Rear height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the REAR HEIGHT left and right speakers directly behind the main listening position. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)



SHL/SHR (Surround height speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the surround speakers.

- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

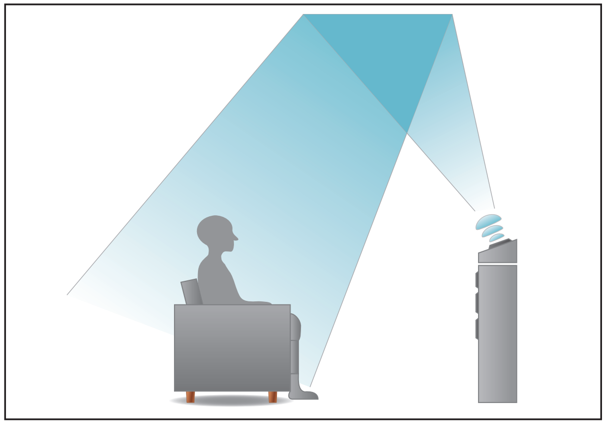


FDL/FDR (Front Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the FRONT Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the front speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled integrated with a front speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the front speaker.
SDL/SDR (Surround Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the SURROUND Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround speaker.
BDL/BDR (Back Dolby speaker left/right)**:**	Place the BACK Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround back speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround back speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround back speaker.

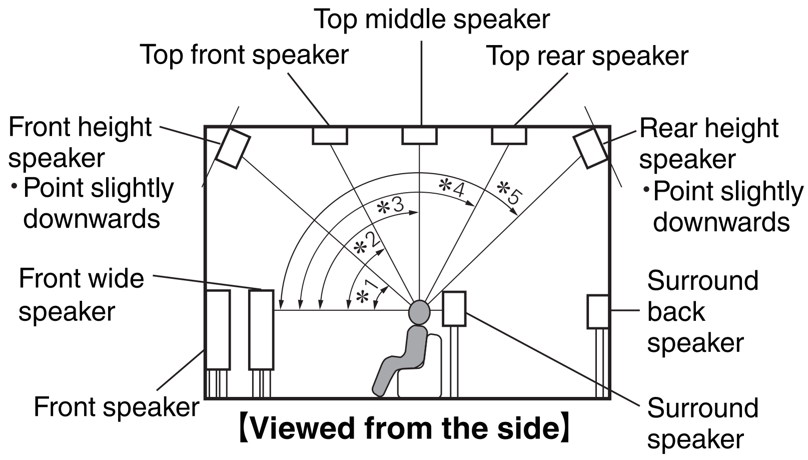
About Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers reflect the sound off the ceiling to allow the sound to come from over your head by using a special upward-pointing speaker that is placed on the floor.

You can enjoy the Dolby Atmos 3D sound even in an environment where speakers cannot be installed on the ceiling.



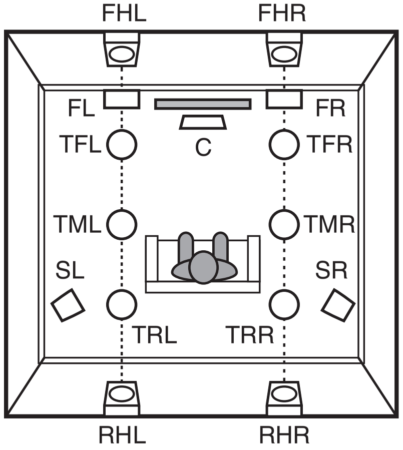
- This unit is compatible with Audyssey DSX®, Dolby Atmos and DTS:X which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation.
  When using Audyssey DSX®, install front wide speakers or front height speakers.
- Use the illustration below as a guide for how high each speaker should be installed. The height does not need to be exactly the same.


Top middle speaker
Top front speaker
Top rear speaker
Front height speaker
•Point slightly downwards
Rear height speaker
•Point slightly downwards
Front wide speaker
Surround back speaker
Front speaker
Surround speaker
*1
*2
*3
*4
*5

[Viewed from the side]

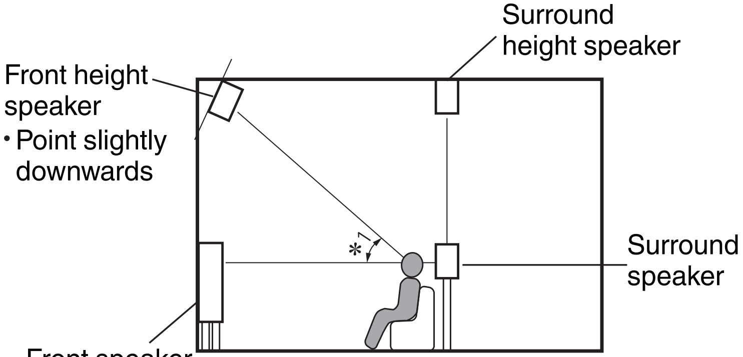
*1 30° - 45°
*2 30° - 55°
*3 65° - 100°
*4 125° - 150°
*5 135° - 150°

Height speakers layout


FHL
FHR
FL
FR
TFL
C
TFR
TML
TMR
SL
SR
TRL
TRR
RHL
RHR

[Viewed from the top]

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

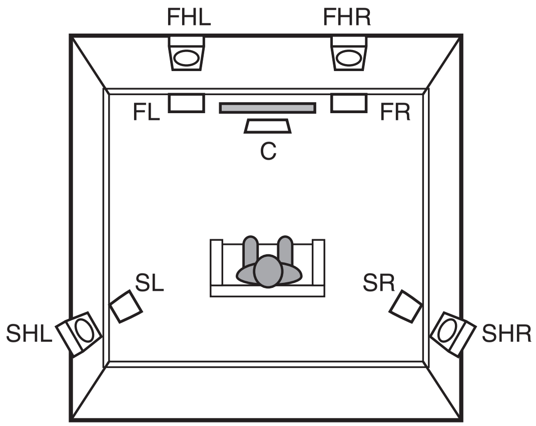

Surround
height speaker
Front height speaker
・Point slightly downwards
*1
Surround
speaker
Front speaker

[Viewed from the side]

*1 30° - 45°

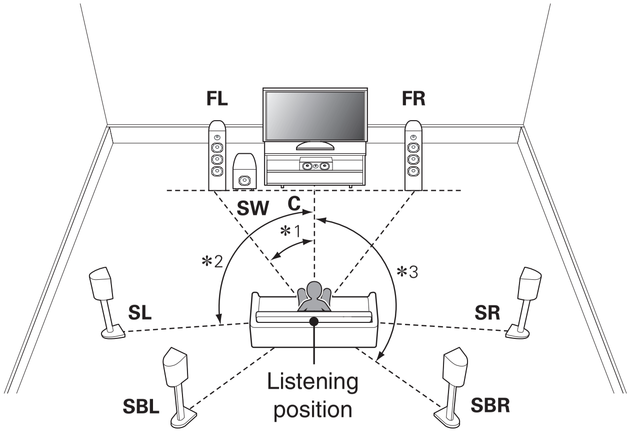
- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

Height speakers layout


FHL
FHR
FL
FR
C
SL
SR
SHL
SHR

[Viewed from the top]

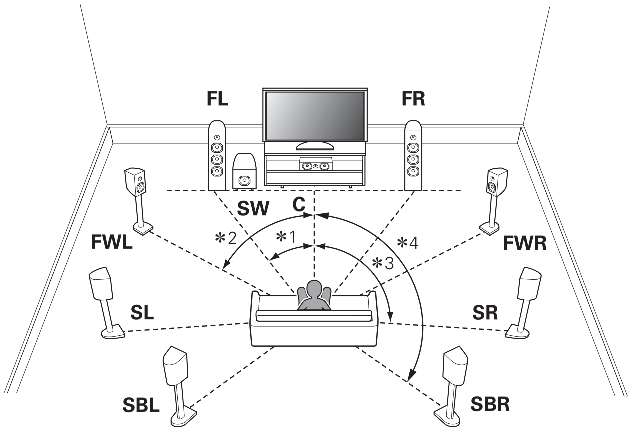
■ When 7.1-channel speakers are installed using surround back speakers


FL
FR
SW
C
*1
*2
*3
SL
SR
SBL
SBR
Listening position

*1:22° - 30° *2:90° - 110° *3:135° - 150°

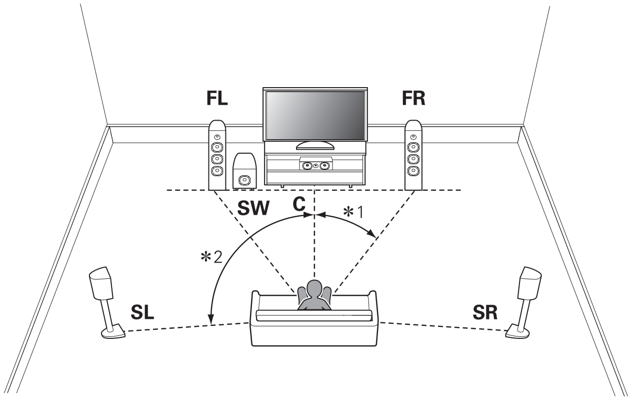
- When using a single surround back speaker, place it directly behind the listening position.

■ When 9.1-channel speakers are installed using front wide speakers


FL
FR
SW
C
*1
*2
*3
*4
FWL
FWR
SL
SR
SBL
SBR

*1: 22° - 30° *2: 55° - 60° *3: 90° - 110° *4: 135° - 150°

■ When 5.1-channel speakers are installed

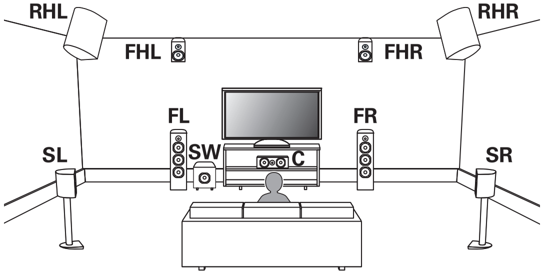


*1:22° - 30° *2:120°

■ Layout including height speakers and ceiling speakers

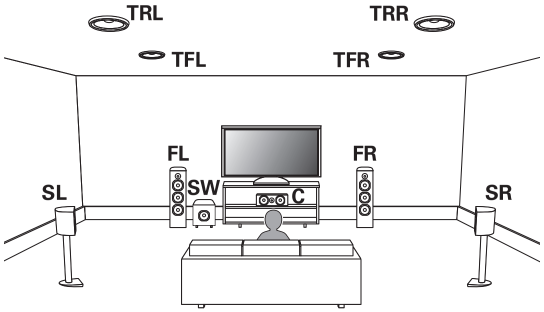
❑ Height speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front height/rear height speakers.


RHL
RHR
FHL
FHR
FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR

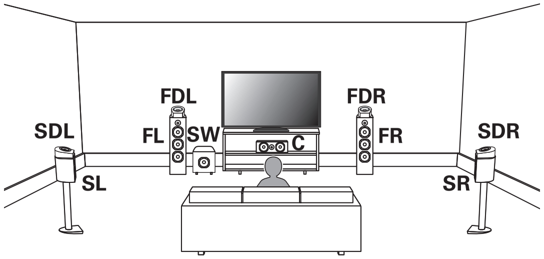
❑ Ceiling speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and top front/top rear speakers.


TRL
TRR
TFL
TFR
FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR

❑ Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker layout example

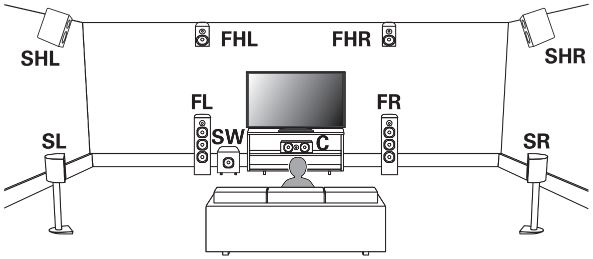
Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front Dolby/surround Dolby speakers.



Upgrade (Auro-3D)

❑ Auro-3D layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel speakers with Front Height/Surround Height speakers.



- For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

Speaker connection

Here we connect the speakers in the room to this unit.
This section explains how to connect them using typical examples.

NOTE

- Disconnect this unit's power plug from the power outlet before connecting the speakers. Also, turn off the subwoofer.
- Connect so that the speaker cable core wires do not protrude from the speaker terminal. The protection circuit may be activated if the core wires touch the rear panel or if the + and - sides touch each other. ("Protection circuit" (☞ p. 329))
- Never touch the speaker terminals while the power cord is connected. Doing so could result in electric shock. When the "Setup Assistant" (page 9 in the separate "Quick Start Guide") is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" screen for making connections. (Power is not supplied to the speaker terminals while the "Setup Assistant" is running.)
- Use speakers with an impedance of 4 – 16 Ω/ohms.

NOTE

- Carry out the following settings when using a speaker with an impedance of 4 – 6 Ω/ohms.

1. Press and hold the main unit's ◁ and ▷ at the same time for at least 3 seconds.

"∗Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.

2. Press ▽ on the main unit twice.

"∗Sp. Impedance <8ohms>" appears on the display.

3. Use ◁ or ▷ on the main unit to select the impedance.

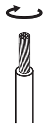
6ohms:	Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 6 Ω/ohms.
4ohms:	Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 4 Ω/ohms.

4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

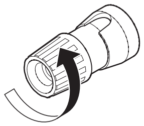
■ Connecting the speaker cables

Carefully check the left (L) and right (R) channels and + (red) and – (black) polarities on the speakers being connected to this unit, and be sure to connect the channels and polarities correctly.

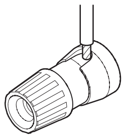
1 **Peel off about 3/8 inch (10 mm) of sheathing from the tip of the speaker cable, then either twist the core wire tightly or terminate it.**



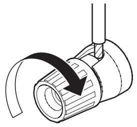
2 **Turn the speaker terminal counterclockwise to loosen it.**



3 **Insert the speaker cable's core wire to the hilt into the speaker terminal.**



4 **Turn the speaker terminal clockwise to tighten it.**

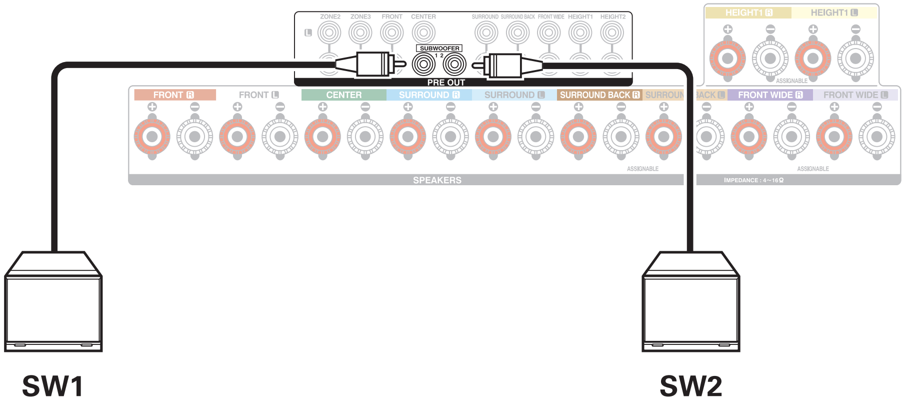


■ Connecting the subwoofer

Use a subwoofer cable to connect the subwoofer. Two subwoofers can be connected to this unit.

To use two subwoofers, set "Subwoofer" to "2 spkrs" in the "Speaker Config." setting. (☞ p. 237)

The level and distance can be set separately for Subwoofer 1 and Subwoofer 2.


ZONE2
ZONE3
FRONT
CENTER
SURROUND
SURROUND BACK
FRONT WIDE
HEIGHT1
HEIGHT2
L
SUBWOOFER
1 2
PRE OUT
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
ASSIGNABLE
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
ASSIGNABLE
ASSIGNABLE
SPEAKERS
IMPEDANCE : 4～16Ω
SW1
SW2

About the cable label (supplied) for channel identification

The channel display section for speaker terminals on the rear panel is color-coded for each channel to be identifiable.

Attach the cable label corresponding to each speaker to each speaker cable.
This makes it easy to connect the correct cable to the speaker terminals on the rear panel.

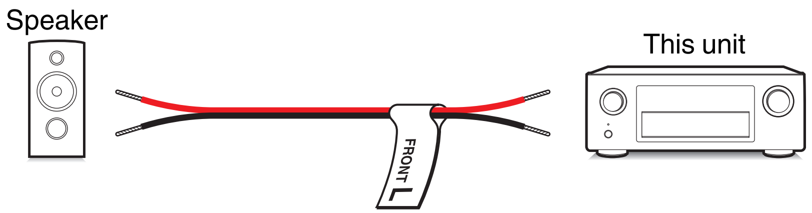
Speaker terminals	Color
FRONT L	White
FRONT R	Red
CENTER	Green
SURROUND L	Light blue
SURROUND R	Blue
SURROUND BACK L	Beige
SURROUND BACK R	Brown
FRONT WIDE L	Light Purple
FRONT WIDE R	Purple
FRONT HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
FRONT HEIGHT R	Yellow
TOP FRONT L	Light Yellow
TOP FRONT R	Yellow
TOP MIDDLE L	Light Yellow
TOP MIDDLE R	Yellow
TOP REAR L	Light Yellow
TOP REAR R	Yellow
REAR HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
REAR HEIGHT R	Yellow
FRONT DOLBY L	Light Yellow
FRONT DOLBY R	Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY L	Light Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY R	Yellow
BACK DOLBY L	Light Yellow
BACK DOLBY R	Yellow
SUBWOOFER	Black

Attach the cable label for each channel to its speaker cable as shown in the diagram.

Refer to the table and attach the label to each speaker cable.

Then, make connection so that the color of the speaker terminal matches that of the cable label.

【 How to attach the cable label 】



Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings

This unit has a built-in 7-channel power amplifier. In addition to the basic 5.1-channel system, a variety of speaker systems can be configured by changing the “Amp Assign” settings to suit the application, such as 7.1-channel systems, bi-amp connections and 2-channel systems for multi-zone playback. (☞ p. 231)

Perform “Amp Assign” settings to suit the number of rooms and speaker configuration to be installed. (☞ p. 231)

Playback speaker in each zone			“Amp Assign” settings	Connection page
MAIN ZONE	ZONE2	ZONE3		
5.1-channel playback	**2-channel (Pre-out)**	**2-channel (Pre-out)**	**Can be set in all “Amp Assign” modes.**	**48**
7.1-channel playback			**7.1ch**	**49**
9.1-channel playback			**9.1ch**	**54**
5.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)			**5.1ch (Bi-Amp)**	**64**
7.1-channel playback + 2-channel speakers for stereo playback			**7.1ch/2ch Front**	**65**
5.1-channel playback + second pair of front speakers			**5.1ch + Front B**	**66**
5.1-channel playback	**2-channel (Speaker out)**	**2-channel (Pre-out)**	**5.1ch + ZONE2 (Default)**	**67**
	2-channel (Pre-out)	**2-channel (Speaker out)**	**5.1ch + ZONE3**	**67**
	1-channel (Speaker out)	**1-channel (Speaker out)**	**5.1ch + ZONE2/3-MONO**	**68**

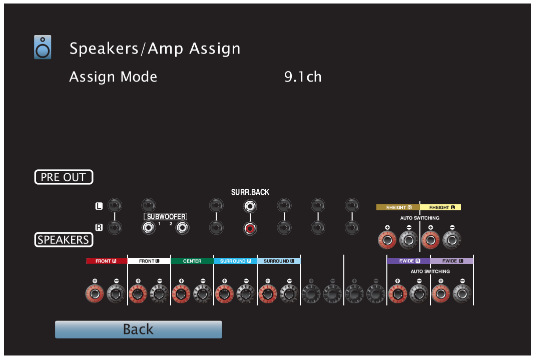
The sound mode that can be selected varies according to the speaker configuration. See “Relationship between sound modes and channel output” (☞ p. 310) for the sound modes that are supported.

The following pages provide basic connection examples.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Refer to the example connection for “Example connection for the Auro-3D 9.1-channel system” (☞ p. 61) when playing Auro-3D with a 9.1-channel system using the basic 5.1-channel system and the front height and surround height speakers.

- In addition to the connections described in p.48 - 69, this unit allows for various speaker connections with the “Amp Assign” setting.
  Also refer to the menu screen in “View Terminal Config.” on the “Amp Assign” setting screen, which shows how to make connections in your environment.



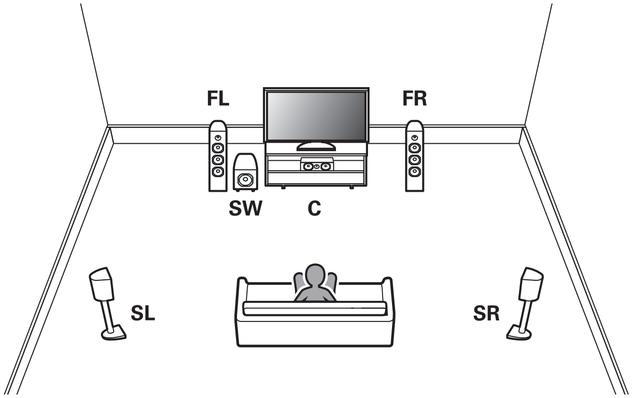
Speakers/Amp Assign

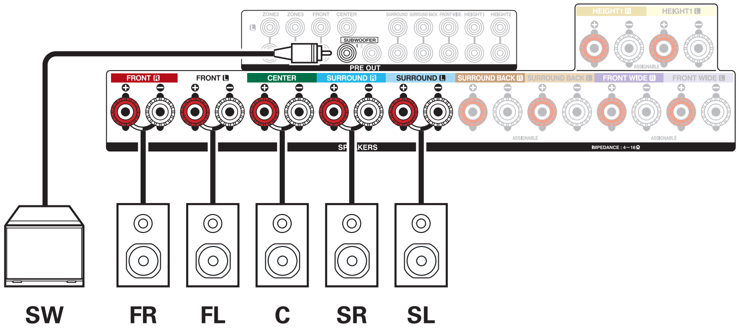
Assign Mode 9.1ch

PRE OUT
SPEAKERS
L
R
SUBWOOFER
1
2
SURR.BACK
F.HEIGHT R
F.HEIGHT L
AUTO SWITCHING
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
F.WIDE R
F.WIDE L
AUTO SWITCHING
Back

■ 5.1-channel playback

This serves as a basic 5.1-channel surround system.


FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR


FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
SPEAKERS
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL

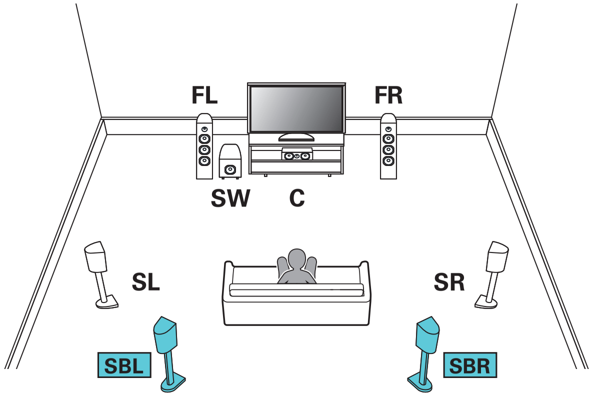
■ 7.1-channel playback

System for 7.1-channel surround playback.

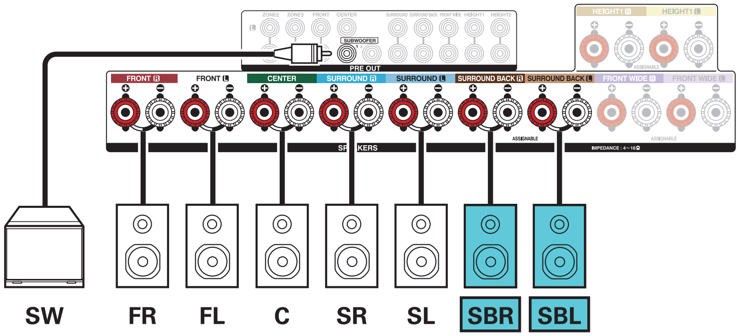
You can connect speakers for up to 11-channels for MAIN ZONE. When you connect speakers for 8 or more channels, the output speakers automatically switch according to the input signal and sound mode.

❑ Example connections when using surround back speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with surround back speakers.


FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR
SBL
SBR

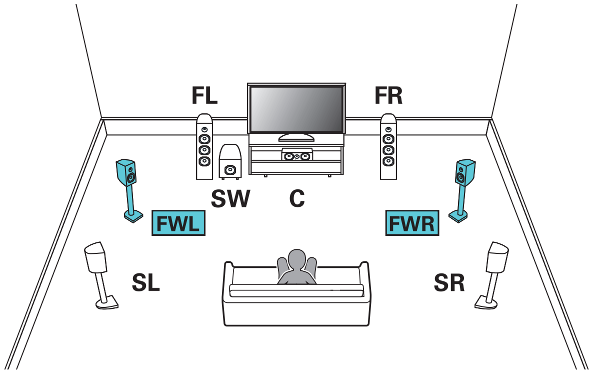
- Set “Floor” - “Layout” to “5ch & SB & FW” or “5ch & SB” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)

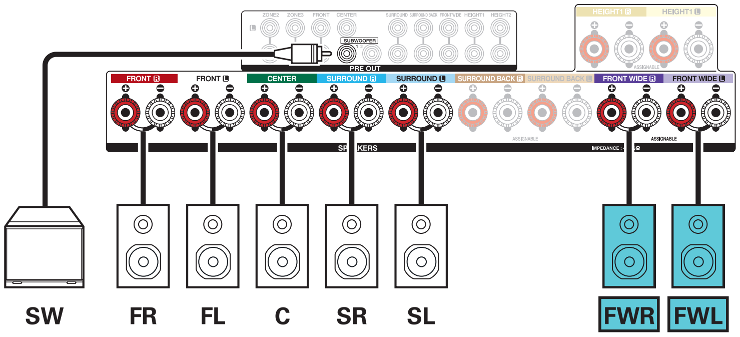

FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
ASSIGNABLE
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
SBR
SBL

- When using a single surround back speaker, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L terminal.

❑ Example connections when using front wide speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front wide speakers.

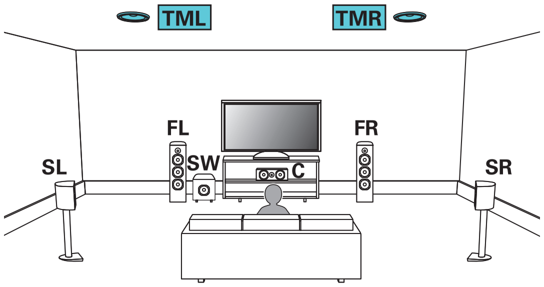

FL
FR
SW
C
FWL
FWR
SL
SR

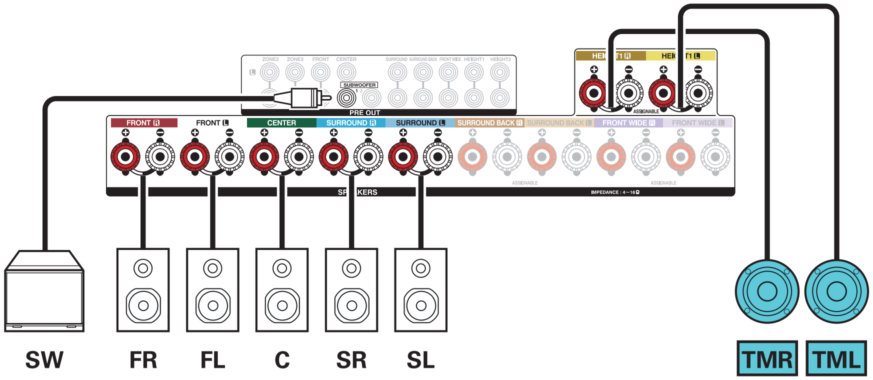

PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
SPEAKERS
IMPEDANCE
ASSIGNABLE
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
FWR
FWL

- Set “Floor” - “Layout” to “5ch & SB & FW” or “5ch & FW” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)

❑ Example connections when using ceiling speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with ceiling speakers.

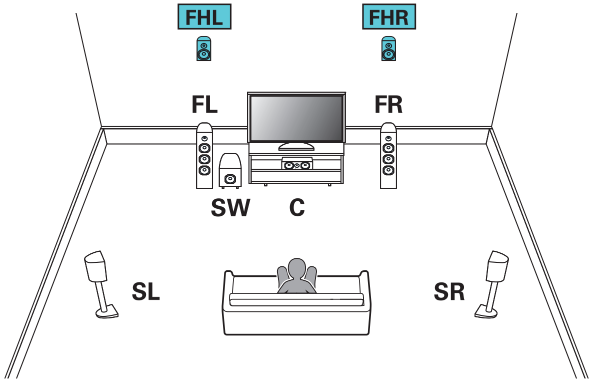

TML
TMR
FL
FR
SL
SW
C
SR

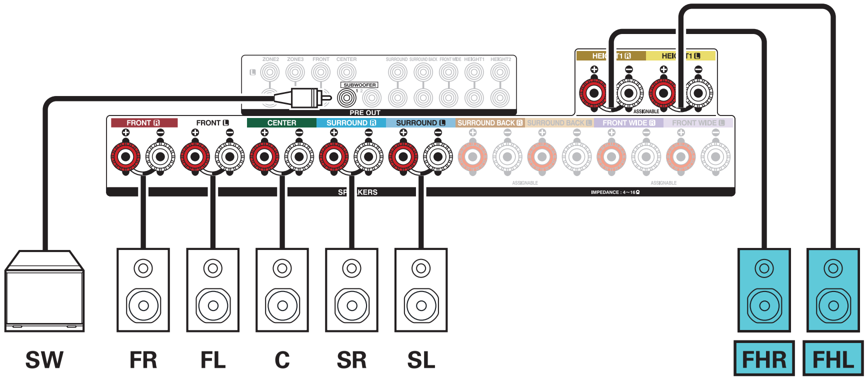

SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
TMR
TML
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
SPEAKERS
ASSIGNABLE
IMPEDANCE : 4~16Ω

- Set “Height Sp” to “2ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)
- The top front or top rear speakers can be connected instead of the top middle speakers. In this case, set the ceiling speakers to be connected under “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (☞ p. 234)

❑ Example connections when using height speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front height speakers.

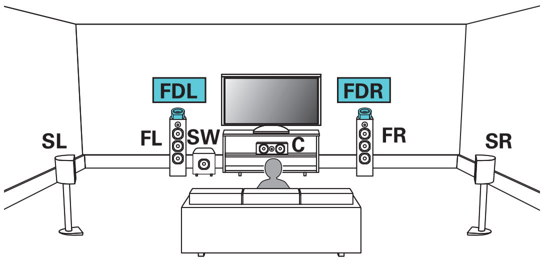


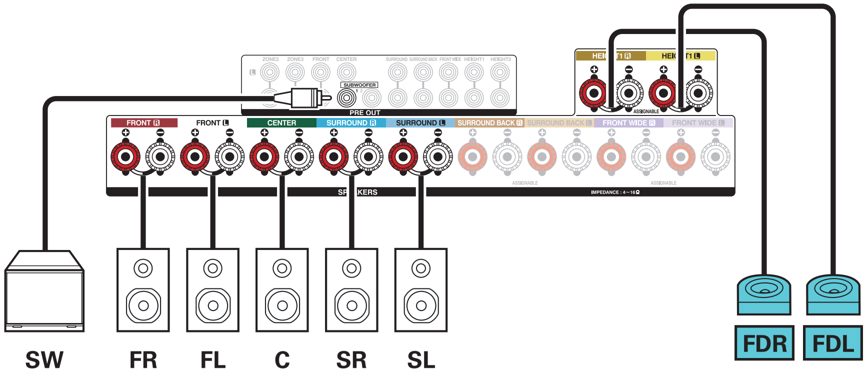


- Set “Height Sp” to “2ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)
- The rear height speakers can be connected instead of the front height speakers. In this case, set the height speakers to be connected under “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (☞ p. 234)

❑ Example connections when using Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front Dolby speakers.


FDL
FDR
SL
FL
SW
C
FR
SR


FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
ASSIGNABLE
SPEAKERS
IMPEDANCE : 4~16Ω
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
FDR
FDL

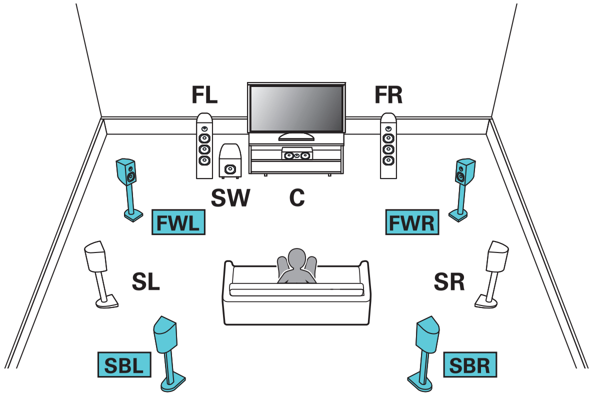
- Set “Dolby Sp” to “2ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)
- The surround Dolby speakers can be connected instead of the front Dolby speakers. In this case, set the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to be connected under “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (☞ p. 234)

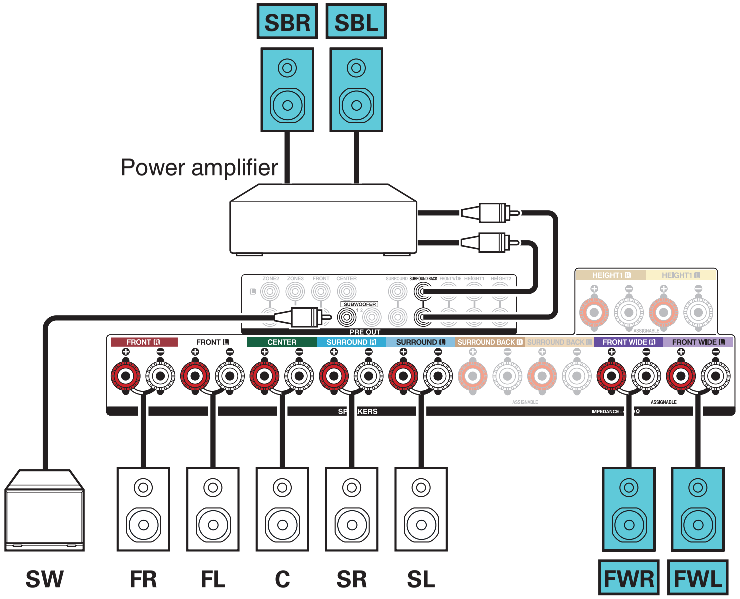
■ 9.1-channel playback

System for 9.1-channel surround playback.

You can connect speakers for up to 13-channels for MAIN ZONE by using an external power amplifier. When you connect speakers for 10 or more channels, the output speakers automatically switch according to the input signal and sound mode.

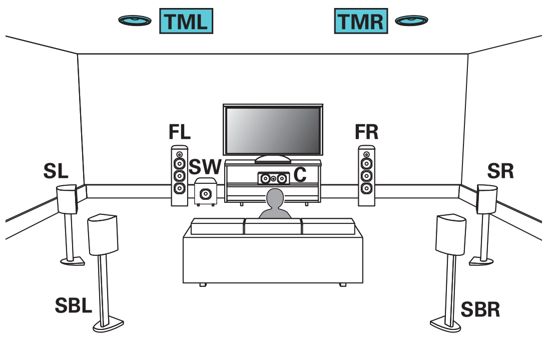
❑ Example connection when using surround back and front wide speakers


FL
FR
SW
C
FWL
FWR
SL
SR
SBL
SBR

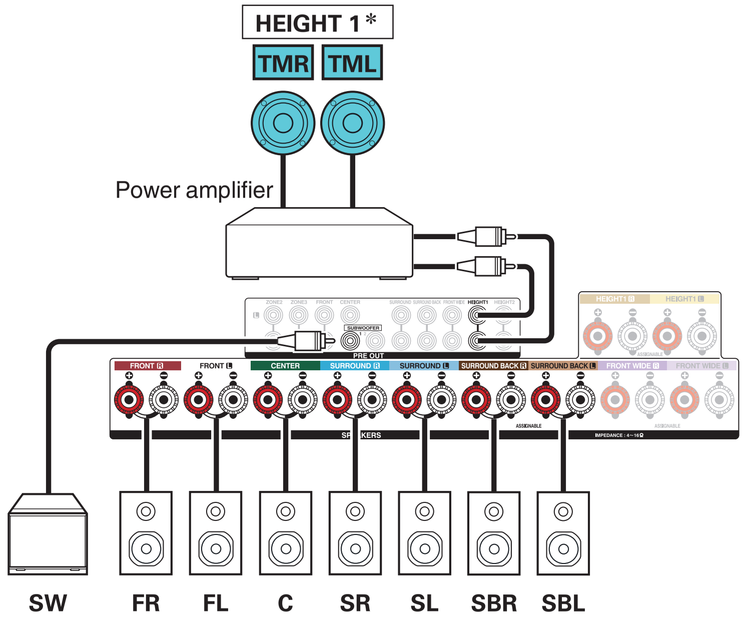

SBR
SBL
Power amplifier
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
SPEAKERS
ASSIGNABLE
IMPEDANCE
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
FWR
FWL

- Set “Floor” - “Layout” to “5ch & SB & FW” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)

❑ Example connection when using one set of ceiling speakers

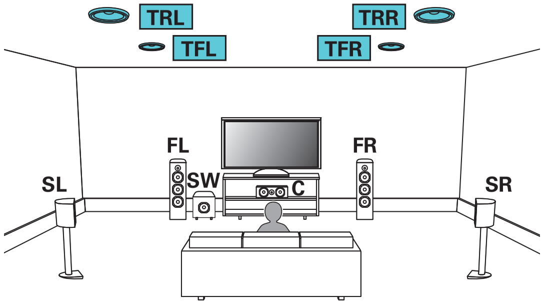

TML
TMR
FL
FR
SL
SW
C
SR
SBL
SBR

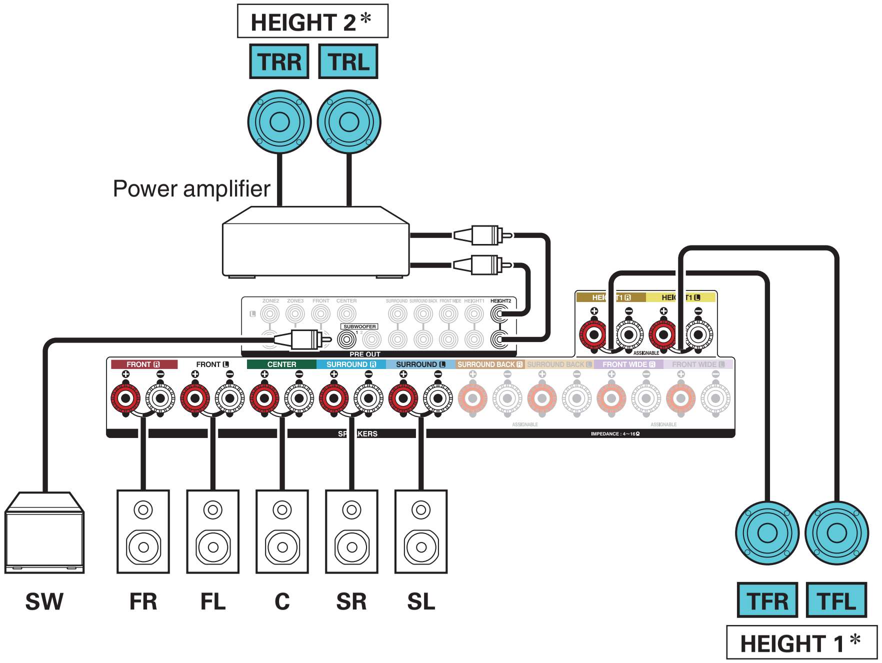
- Set “Height” - “Height Sp” to “2ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)


HEIGHT 1 *
TMR
TML
Power amplifier
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
SBR
SBL

* The top front or top rear speakers can be connected instead of the top middle speakers. In this case, set the ceiling speakers to be connected under “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (☞ p. 234)

❑ Example connection when using two sets of ceiling speakers

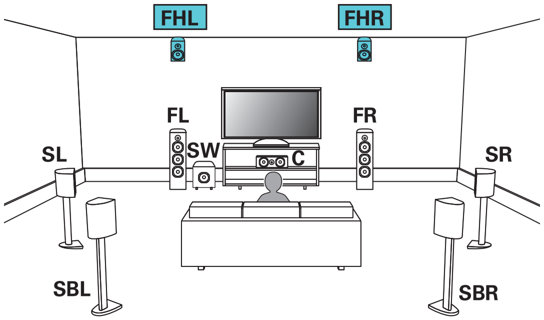

TRL
TFL
TRR
TFR
FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR

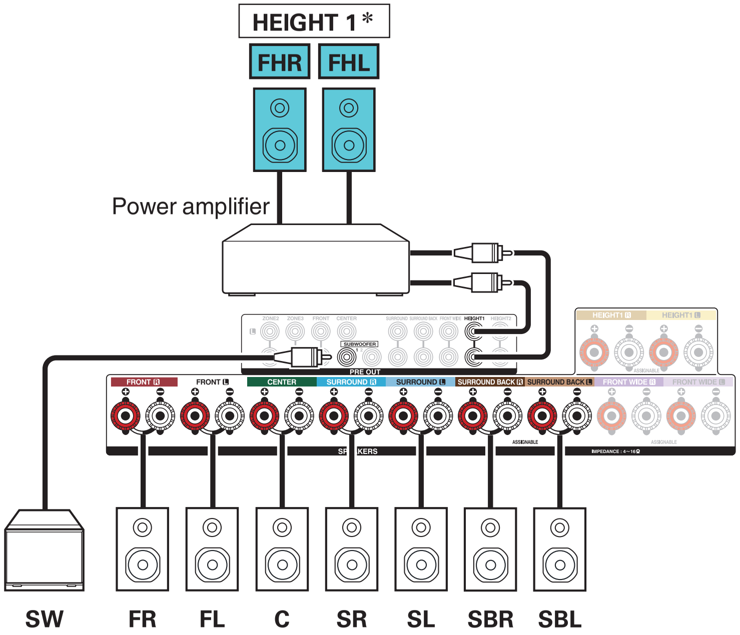

HEIGHT 2 *
TRR
TRL
Power amplifier
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
TFR
TFL
HEIGHT 1 *

- Set “Height Sp” to “4ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)

* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 62)

❑ Example connection when using one set of height speakers

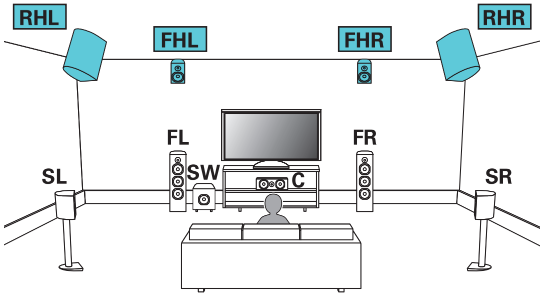

FHL
FHR
FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR
SBL
SBR

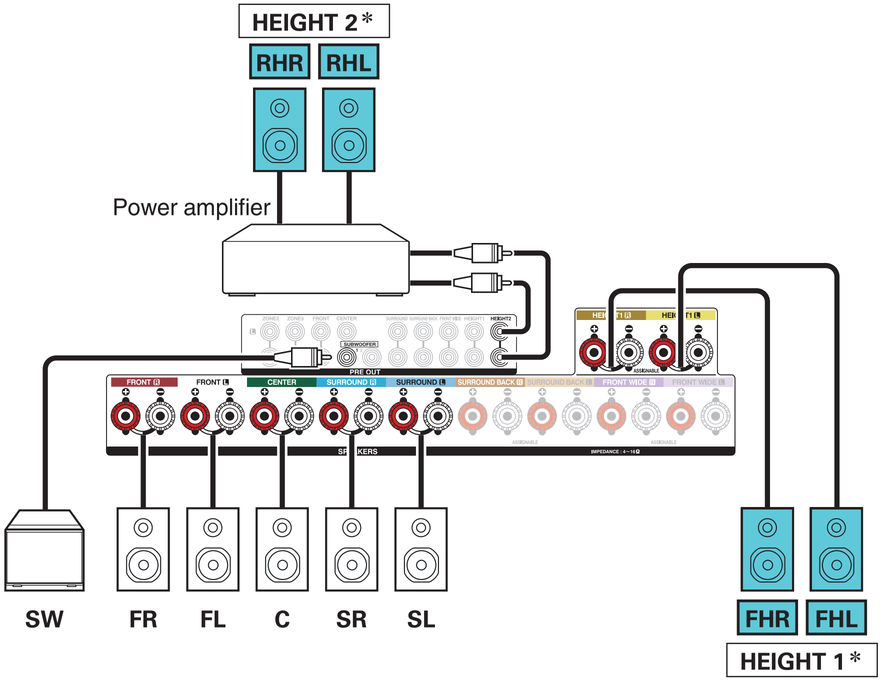

HEIGHT 1 *
FHR
FHL
Power amplifier
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
HEIGHT1
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE
ASSIGNABLE
SPEAKERS
IMPEDANCE : 4～16Ω
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
SBR
SBL

- Set “Height” - “Height Sp” to “2ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)

* The rear height speakers can be connected instead of the front height speakers. In this case, set the height speakers to be connected under “Height” - “Layout” in the menu. (☞ p. 234)

❑ Example connection when using two sets of height speakers

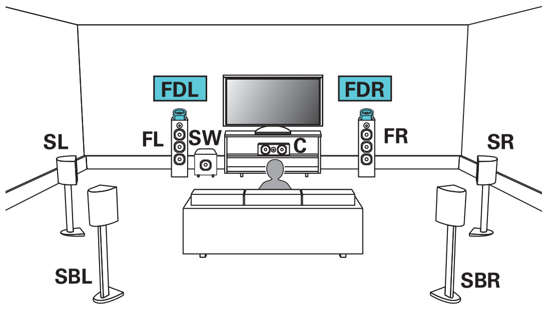

RHL
FHL
FHR
RHR
FL
FR
SL
SW
C
SR


HEIGHT 2*
RHR
RHL
Power amplifier
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
FHR
FHL
HEIGHT 1*

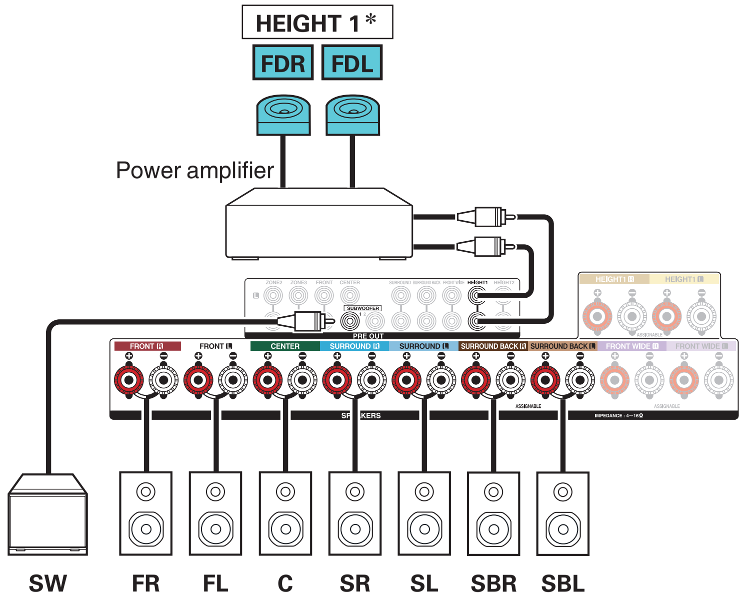
- Set “Height Sp” to “4ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)

* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 62)

❏ Example connection when using one set of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

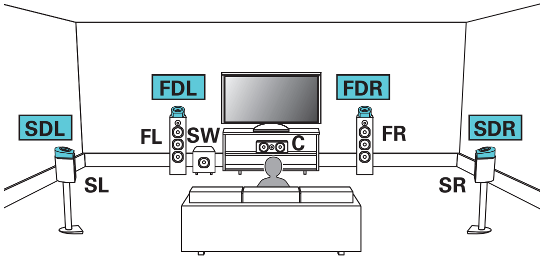

FDL
FDR
SL
FL
SW
C
FR
SR
SBL
SBR

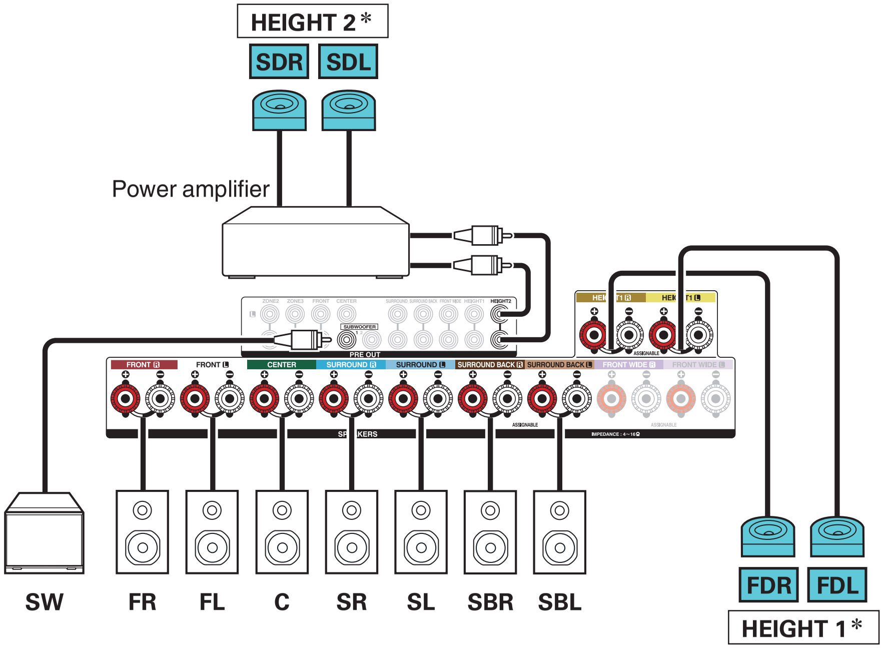
- Set "Height" - "Dolby Sp" to "2ch" in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)


HEIGHT 1 *
FDR
FDL
Power amplifier
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
HEIGHT1
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE
SPEAKERS
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
SBR
SBL

* The surround Dolby speakers can be connected instead of the front Dolby speakers. In this case, set the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to be connected under "Height" - "Layout" in the menu. (☞ p. 234)

❑ Example connection when using two sets of Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers


FDL
FDR
SDL
SDR
FL
SW
C
FR
SL
SR


HEIGHT 2 *
SDR
SDL
Power amplifier
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
SBR
SBL
FDR
FDL
HEIGHT 1 *

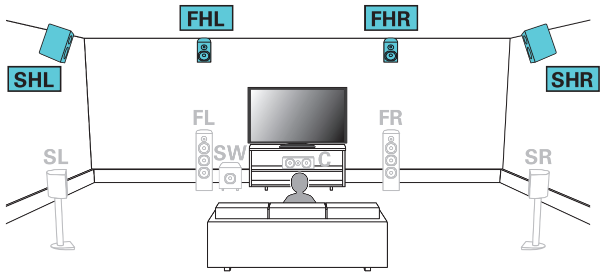
- Set “Dolby Sp” to “4ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 233)

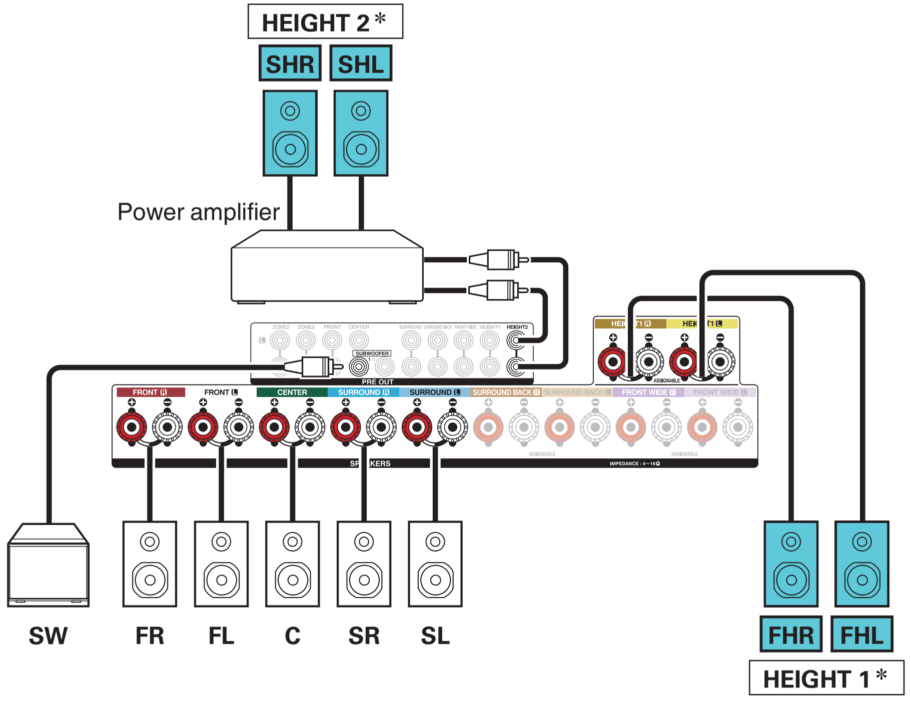
* You can change the combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels in the settings. (☞ p. 62)

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

❑ Example connection for the Auro-3D 9.1-channel system

This speaker configuration is optimized for Auro-3D playback.


FHL
FHR
SHL
SHR
FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR


HEIGHT 2 *
SHR
SHL
Power amplifier
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
FHR
FHL
HEIGHT 1 *

- Set “Floor” - “Layout” to “5ch” or set “5ch & SB” and “Height Sp” to “4ch” in the menu when connecting in this configuration. (☞ p. 235)
  Next, set “Height” - “Layout” to “Front Height & Surr. Height”. (☞ p. 234)

＊The combination of the HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 channels can be changed to the following patterns according to the speaker system being used.
Set this from “Amp Assign” in the menu. (☞ p. 231)

Combination of height speakers to be used			Connected terminals	
Number of height/ ceiling speakers	Number of Dolby Speakers	Combination pattern	HEIGHT1 SPEAKER	HEIGHT2 PRE OUT
2 speakers	None	Front Height	Front Height	-
		Top Front	Top Front	-
		Top Middle	Top Middle	-
		Top Rear	Top Rear	-
		Rear Height	Rear Height	-
4 speakers	None	Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
		Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
		Front Height & Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height
		Top Front & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear
		Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
		Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height
None	2 speakers	Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-
		Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
		Back Dolby	Back Dolby	-
2 speakers	2 speakers	Front Dolby & Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear
		Front Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height
		Front Height & Surr. Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby
		Top Front & Surround Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby
None	4 speakers	Front Dolby & Surround Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby

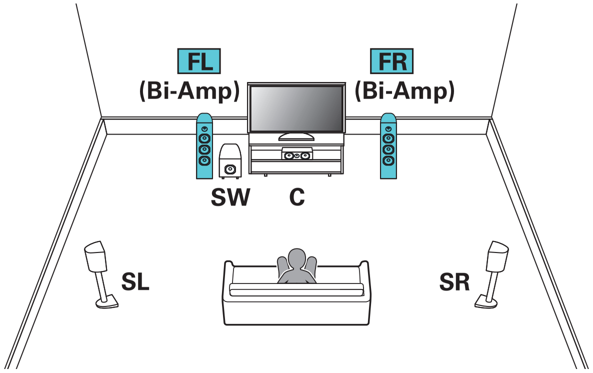
Upgrade (Auro-3D)

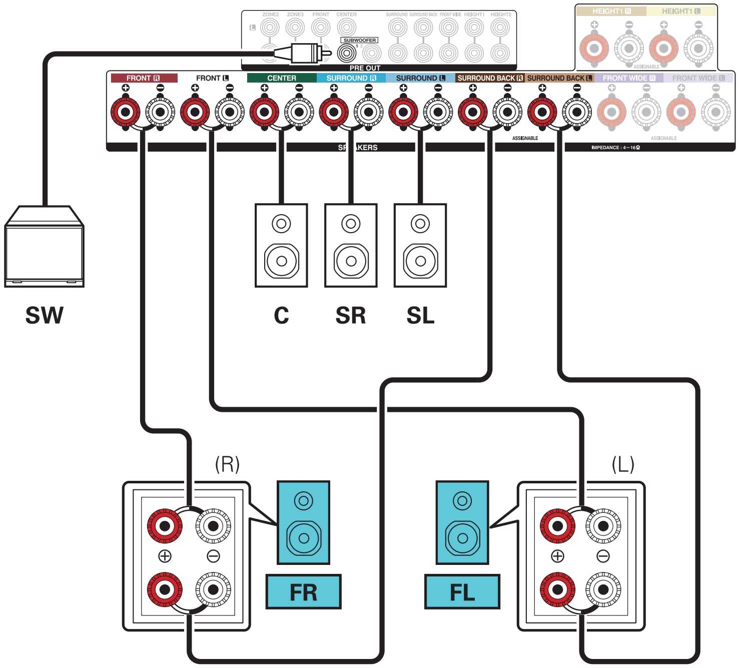
Combination of height speakers to be used			Connected terminals	
Number of height/ ceiling speakers	**Number of Dolby Speakers**	**Combination pattern**	**HEIGHT1 SPEAKER**	**HEIGHT2 PRE OUT**
4 speakers	None	Front Height & Surr. Height	Front Height	Surround Height
		Front Height & Rear Height ✻	Front Height	Rear Height

✻ For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

❏ 5.1-channel (bi-amp connection of front speakers)

This system plays back 5.1-channels. You can use the bi-amp connection for front speakers. Bi-amp connection is a method to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminal and woofer terminal of a speaker that supports bi-amplification. This connection enables back EMF (power returned without being output) from the woofer to flow into the tweeter without affecting the sound quality, producing a higher sound quality.


FL
(Bi-Amp)
FR
(Bi-Amp)
SW
C
SL
SR

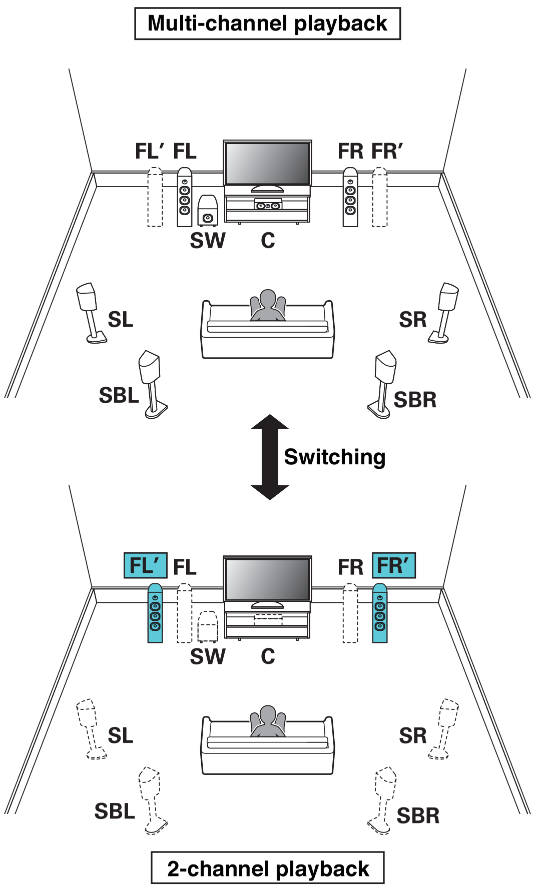

FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
SPEAKERS
ASSIGNABLE
SW
C
SR
SL
(R)
(L)
FR
FL
⊕
⊖

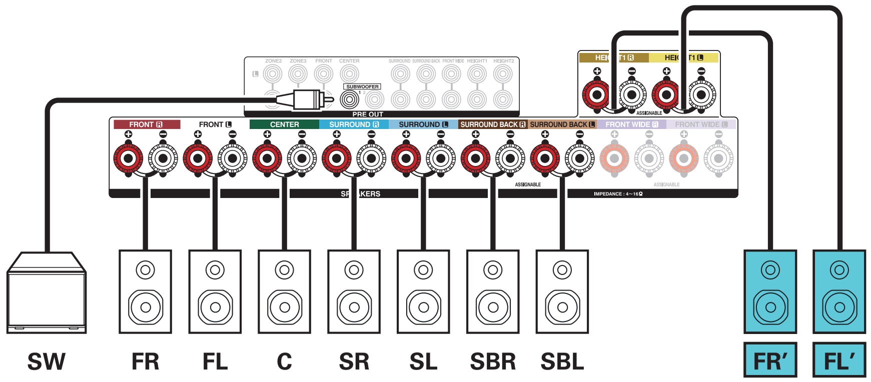
NOTE

- When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker’s woofer and tweeter terminals.

❑ 7.1-channel + speakers used exclusively for 2-channel playback

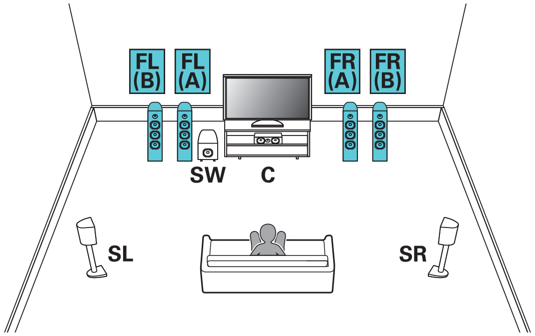
You can connect speakers used exclusively for 2-channel playback, which are used for the direct and stereo modes, and speakers used exclusively for 7.1 multi-channel playback. The speakers used exclusively for multi-channel playback and the speakers used exclusively for 2-channel playback are automatically switched for playback in accordance with the sound mode.

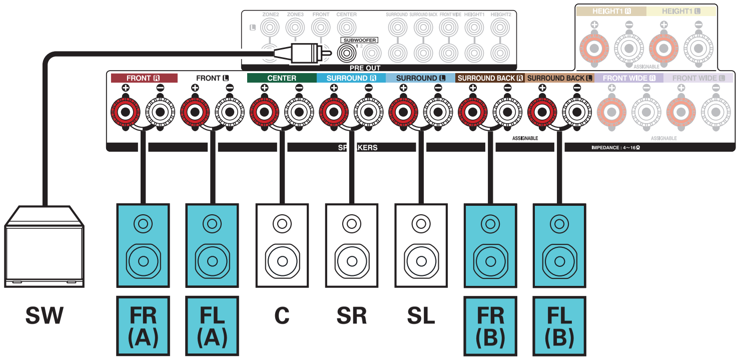

Multi-channel playback
FL′ FL
FR FR′
SW
C
SL
SR
SBL
SBR
Switching
FL′ FL
FR FR′
SW
C
SL
SR
SBL
SBR
2-channel playback


FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
SPEAKERS
ASSIGNABLE
IMPEDANCE : 4 – 16Ω
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
SBR
SBL
FR′
FL′

☐ 5.1-channel + second pair of front speakers

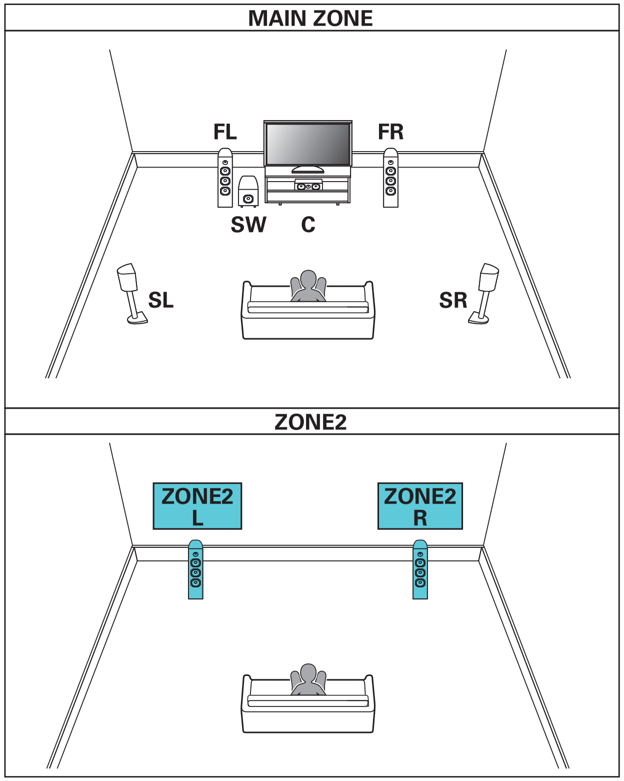
This system enables switching playback between front speakers A and B as desired.

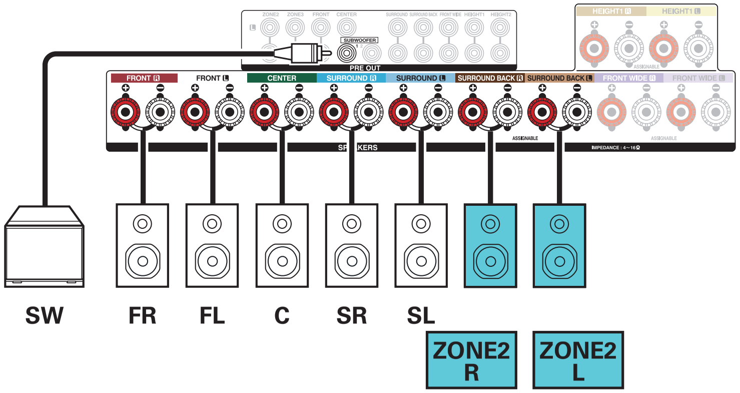

FL (B)
FL (A)
FR (A)
FR (B)
SW
C
SL
SR


SUBWOOFER
PRE OUT
HEIGHT1
FRONT
CENTER
SURROUND
SURROUND BACK
FRONT WIDE
SPEAKERS
ASSIGNABLE
IMPEDANCE : 4 ~ 16Ω
SW
FR (A)
FL (A)
C
SR
SL
FR (B)
FL (B)

❑ 5.1-channel (MAIN ZONE) + 2-channel (ZONE2 or ZONE3)

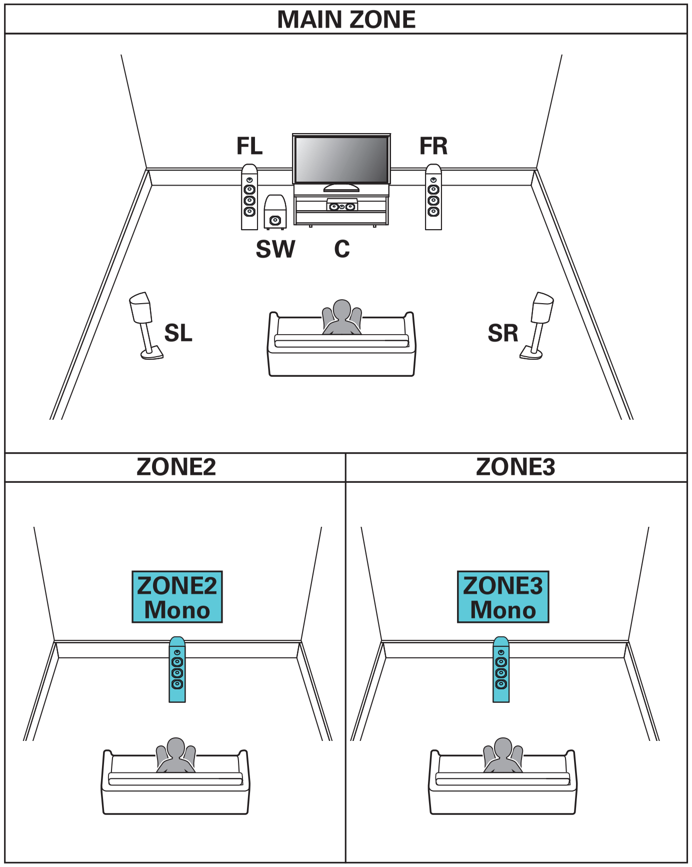
This type of configuration plays back 5.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 2-channels in ZONE2.
(Speakers can output audio from ZONE3 instead of ZONE2 (Assign Mode: 5.1ch + ZONE3).)

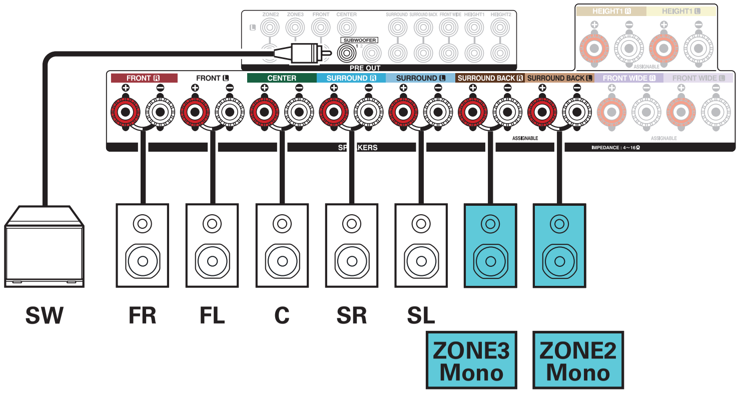

MAIN ZONE
FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR
ZONE2
ZONE2 L
ZONE2 R


ZONE2
ZONE3
FRONT
CENTER
SURROUND
SURROUND BACK
FRONT WIDE
HEIGHT1
HEIGHT2
SUBWOOFER
1
2
PRE OUT
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
ASSIGNABLE
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
ASSIGNABLE
ASSIGNABLE
SPEAKERS
IMPEDANCE : 4～16Ω
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
ZONE2 R
ZONE2 L

❑ 5.1-channel (MAIN ZONE) + 1-channel (ZONE2) + 1-channel (ZONE3)

This type of configuration plays back 5.1-channels in MAIN ZONE and 1-channel (monaural) in ZONE2 and ZONE3.

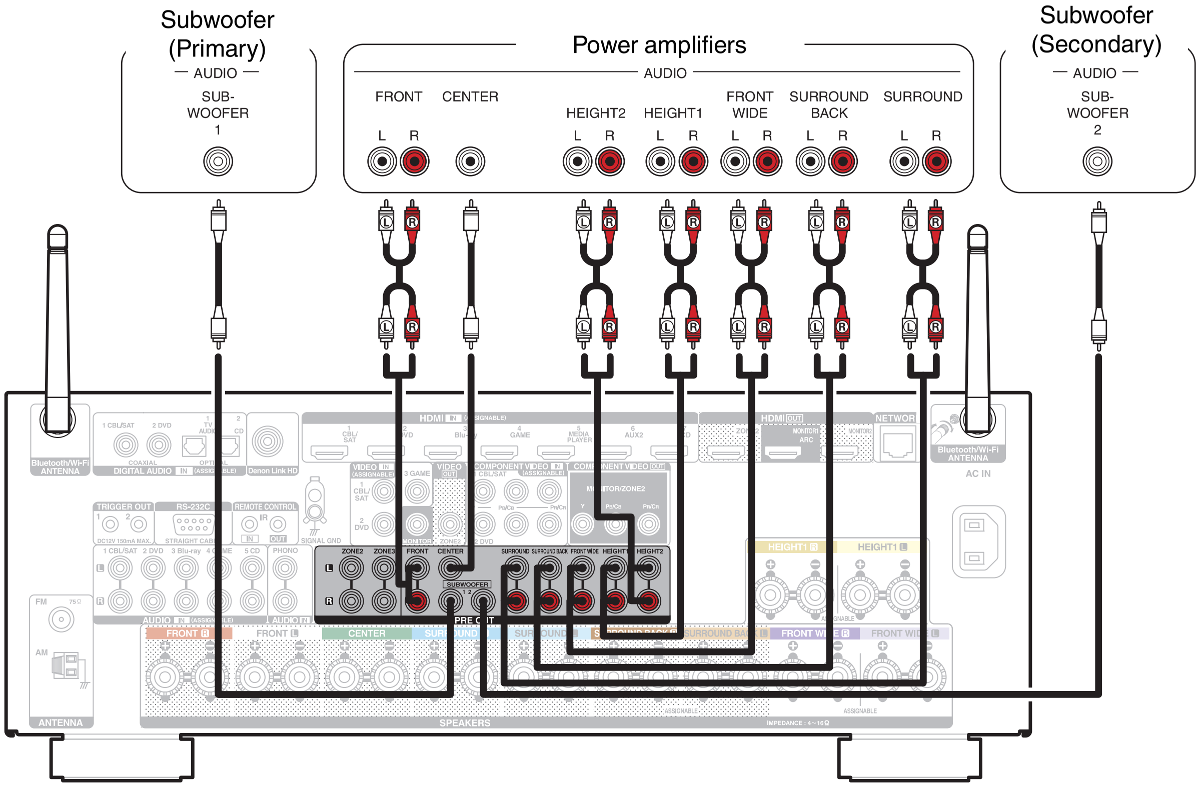

MAIN ZONE
FL
FR
SW
C
SL
SR
ZONE2
ZONE3
ZONE2 Mono
ZONE3 Mono


PRE OUT
SUBWOOFER
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
SPEAKERS
ASSIGNABLE
SW
FR
FL
C
SR
SL
ZONE3 Mono
ZONE2 Mono

■ Connecting an external power amplifier

You can use this unit as a pre-amp by connecting an external power amplifier to the PRE OUT connectors. By adding a power amplifier to each channel, the realness of the sound can be further enhanced.

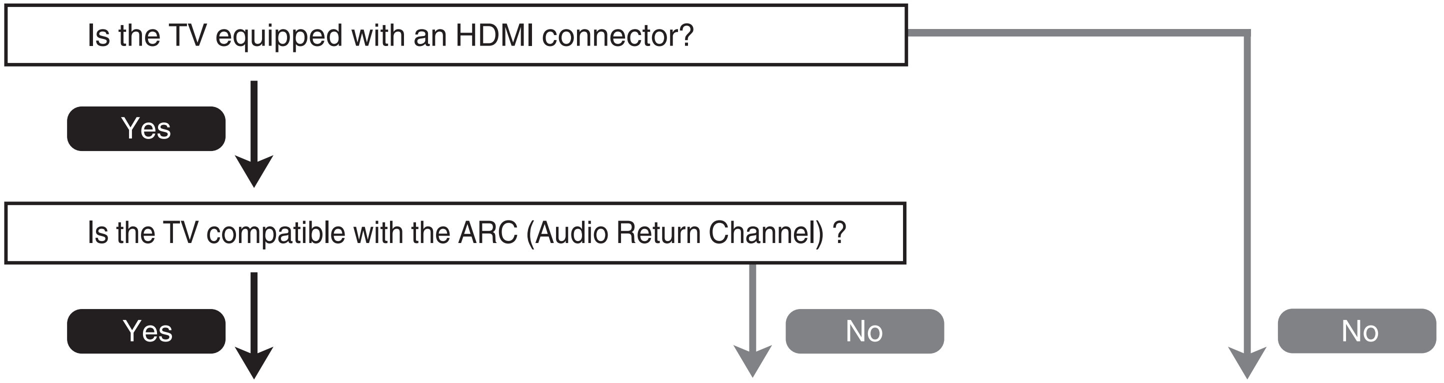
Select the terminal to use and connect the device.


Subwoofer (Primary)
AUDIO
SUB-WOOFER 1
Power amplifiers
AUDIO
FRONT L R
CENTER
HEIGHT2 L R
HEIGHT1 L R
FRONT WIDE L R
SURROUND BACK L R
SURROUND L R
Subwoofer (Secondary)
AUDIO
SUB-WOOFER 2
L
R
PRE OUT
ZONE2
ZONE3
FRONT
CENTER
SUBWOOFER
SURROUND
SURROUND BACK
FRONT WIDE
HEIGHT1
HEIGHT2
SPEAKERS
ANTENNA
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi ANTENNA
AC IN

- When using just one surround back speaker, connect it to the left channel (L) terminal.

Connecting a TV

Connect a TV to this unit so that the input video is output to the TV. You can also enjoy audio from the TV on this unit.
How to connect a TV depends on the connectors and functions equipped on the TV.
ARC (Audio Return Channel) function plays TV audio on this unit by sending the TV audio signal to this unit via HDMI cable.


Is the TV equipped with an HDMI connector?
Yes
Is the TV compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel) ?
Yes
No
No

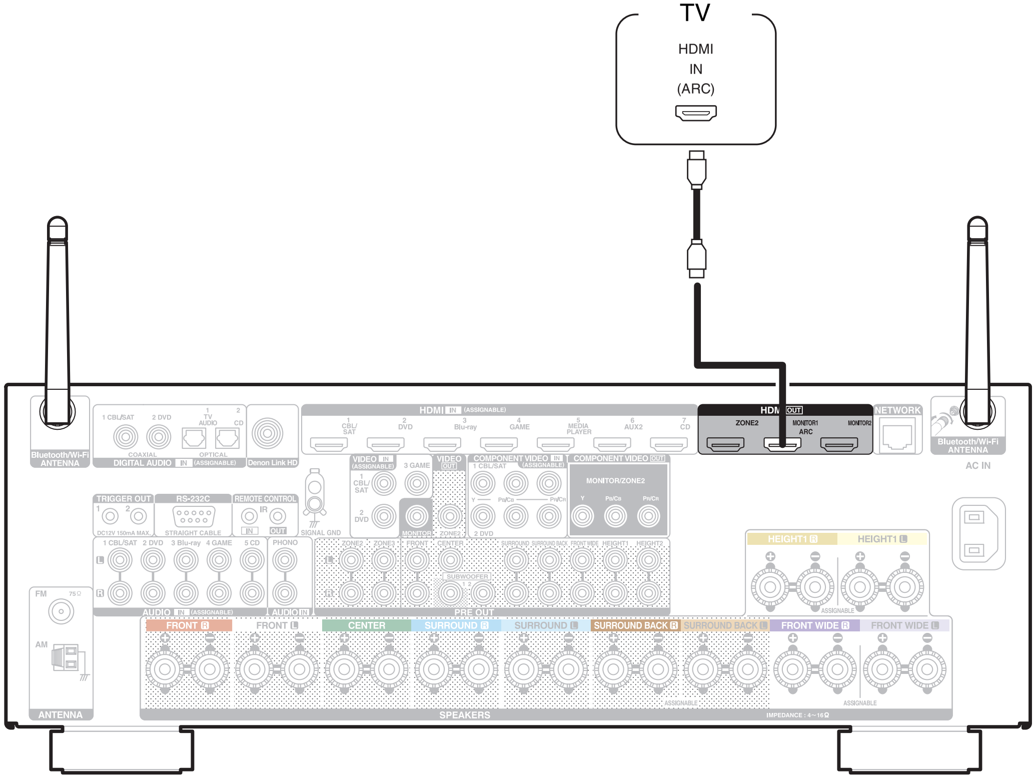
“Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 71)

“Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 72)

“Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” (☞ p. 73)

Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)

Use an HDMI cable to connect a TV that is compatible with the ARC function to this unit.
Set “HDMI Control” to “On” when using a TV that supports the ARC function. (☞ p. 205)

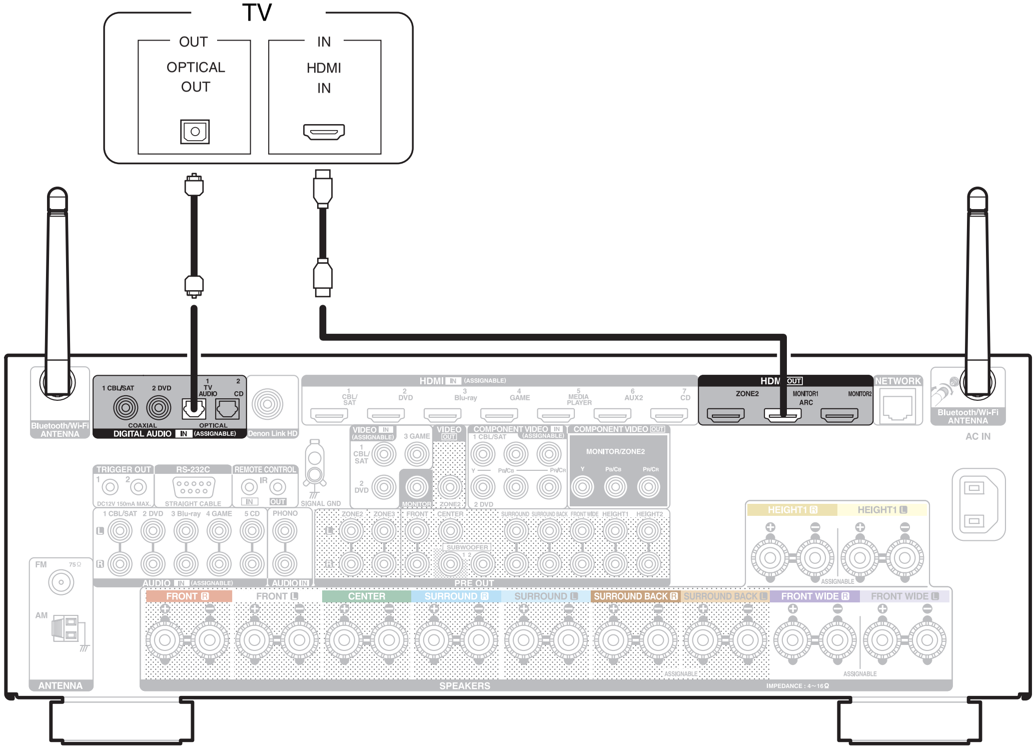

TV
HDMI
IN
(ARC)
HDMI OUT
ZONE2
MONITOR1
ARC
MONITOR2
NETWORK
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi ANTENNA
AC IN
ANTENNA
SPEAKERS
PRE OUT

- When using the HDMI control function, connect to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.

Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)

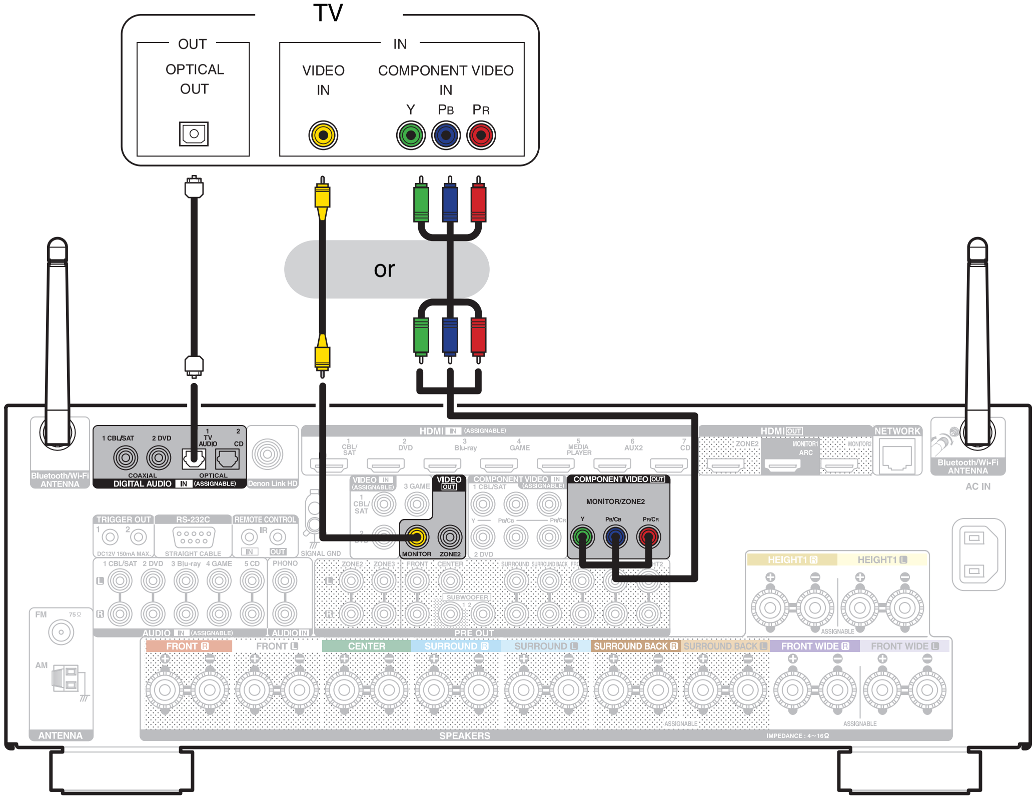
Use an HDMI cable to connect the TV to this unit.

To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.


TV
OUT
OPTICAL
OUT
IN
HDMI
IN
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi ANTENNA
1 CBL/SAT
2 DVD
1 TV AUDIO
2 CD
COAXIAL
OPTICAL
DIGITAL AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
Denon Link HD
HDMI IN (ASSIGNABLE)
HDMI OUT
ZONE2
MONITOR1 ARC
MONITOR2
NETWORK
AC IN
TRIGGER OUT
RS-232C
REMOTE CONTROL
SIGNAL GND
VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
VIDEO OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
MONITOR/ZONE2
AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
PHONO
PRE OUT
HEIGHT1 R
HEIGHT1 L
FM
AM
ANTENNA
FRONT R
FRONT L
CENTER
SURROUND R
SURROUND L
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
FRONT WIDE R
FRONT WIDE L
SPEAKERS
ASSIGNABLE
IMPEDANCE : 4 ~ 16 Ω

Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector

Use a component video or a video cable to connect the TV to this unit.
To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.


TV
OUT
OPTICAL OUT
IN
VIDEO IN
COMPONENT VIDEO IN
Y
PB
PR
or
DIGITAL AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
OPTICAL
1 TV AUDIO
2 CD
VIDEO OUT
MONITOR
ZONE2
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
MONITOR/ZONE2
Y
PB/CB
PR/CR
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi ANTENNA
AC IN

Connecting a playback device

This unit is equipped with three types of video input connectors (HDMI, component video and composite video) and three types of audio input connectors (HDMI, digital audio and audio).

Select input connectors on this unit according to the connectors equipped on the device you want to connect.

If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections.

In the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 75)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 76)
- “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function” (☞ p. 77)
- “Connecting a video camcorder or game console” (☞ p. 78)
- “Connecting a turntable” (☞ p. 79)

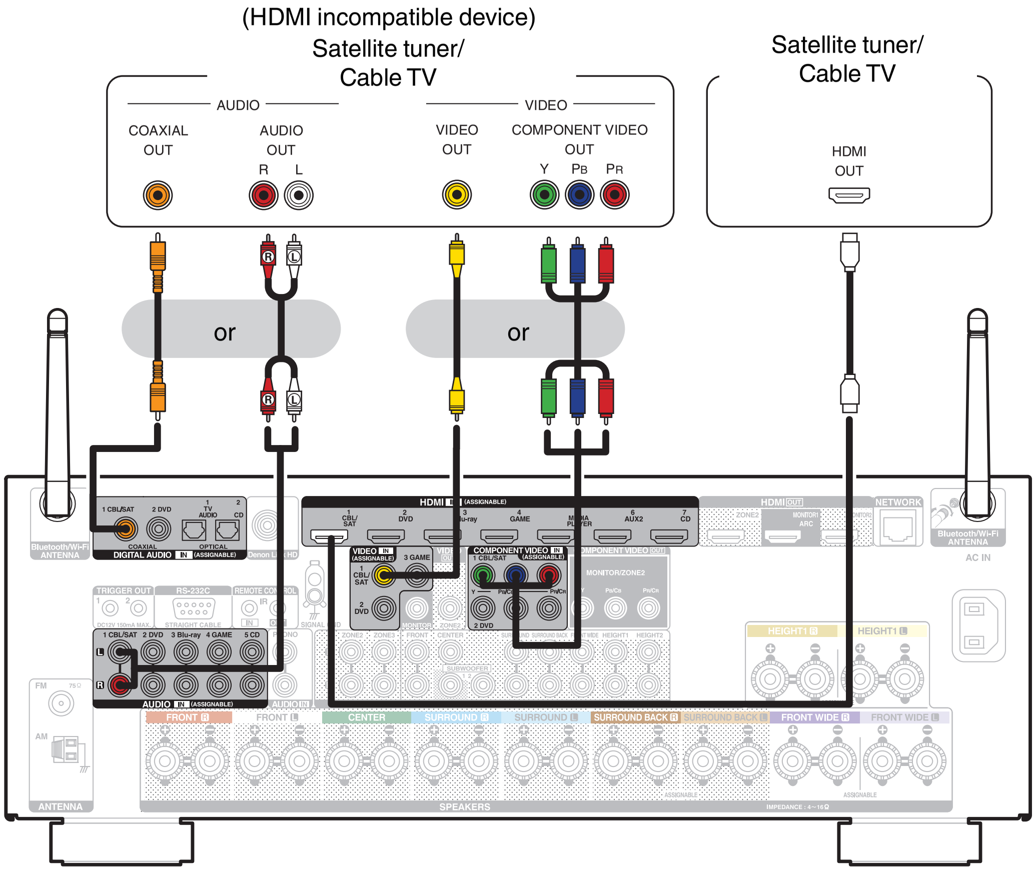
✎

- Connect devices to this unit as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit.
- The source that is assigned to the HDMI IN, DIGITAL AUDIO IN, COMPONENT VIDEO IN, VIDEO IN and AUDIO IN connectors can be changed. See “Input Assign” on how to change the input source assigned to the input connectors. (☞ p. 215)
- To play back audio signals that are input to this unit on a TV connected via HDMI, set in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” to “TV”. (☞ p. 204)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.

Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

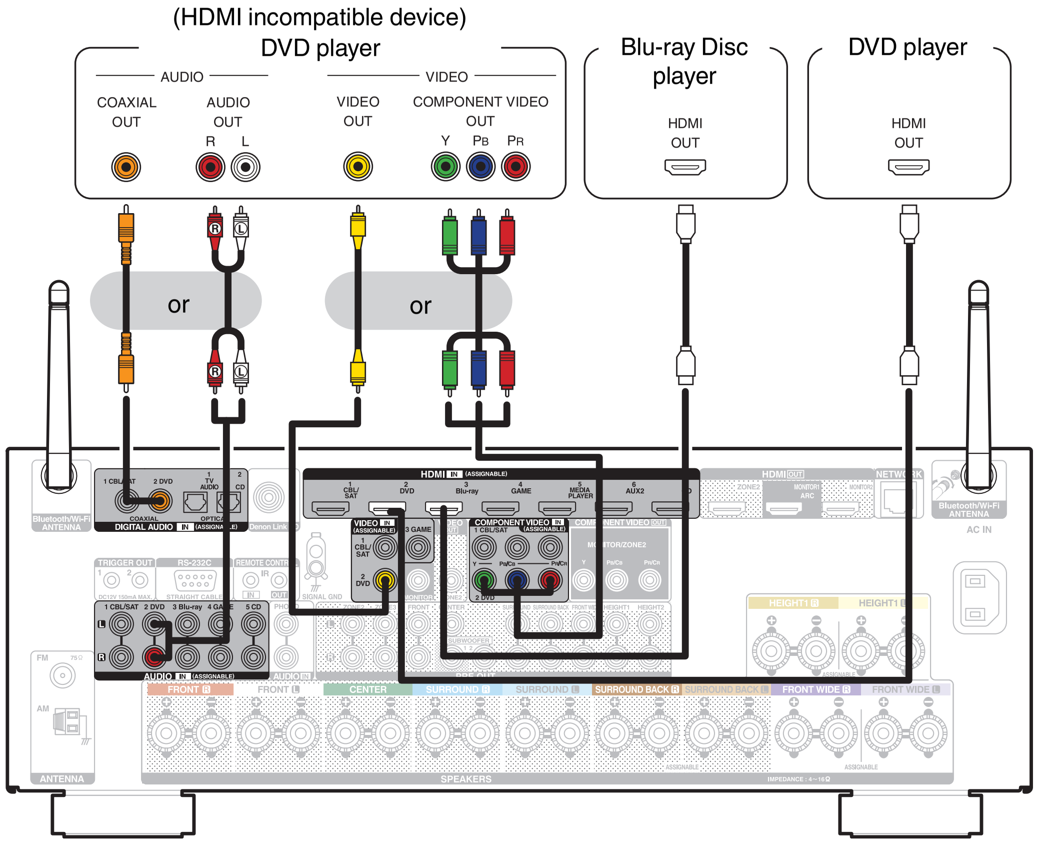
This explanation uses the connection with a satellite tuner/cable TV STB as an example.

Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.


(HDMI incompatible device)
Satellite tuner/
Cable TV
AUDIO
COAXIAL OUT
AUDIO OUT
R
L
VIDEO
VIDEO OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
Y
PB
PR
Satellite tuner/
Cable TV
HDMI OUT
or
or
R
L
DIGITAL AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
HDMI IN (ASSIGNABLE)
VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
COMPONENT VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
SPEAKERS
ANTENNA

Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player

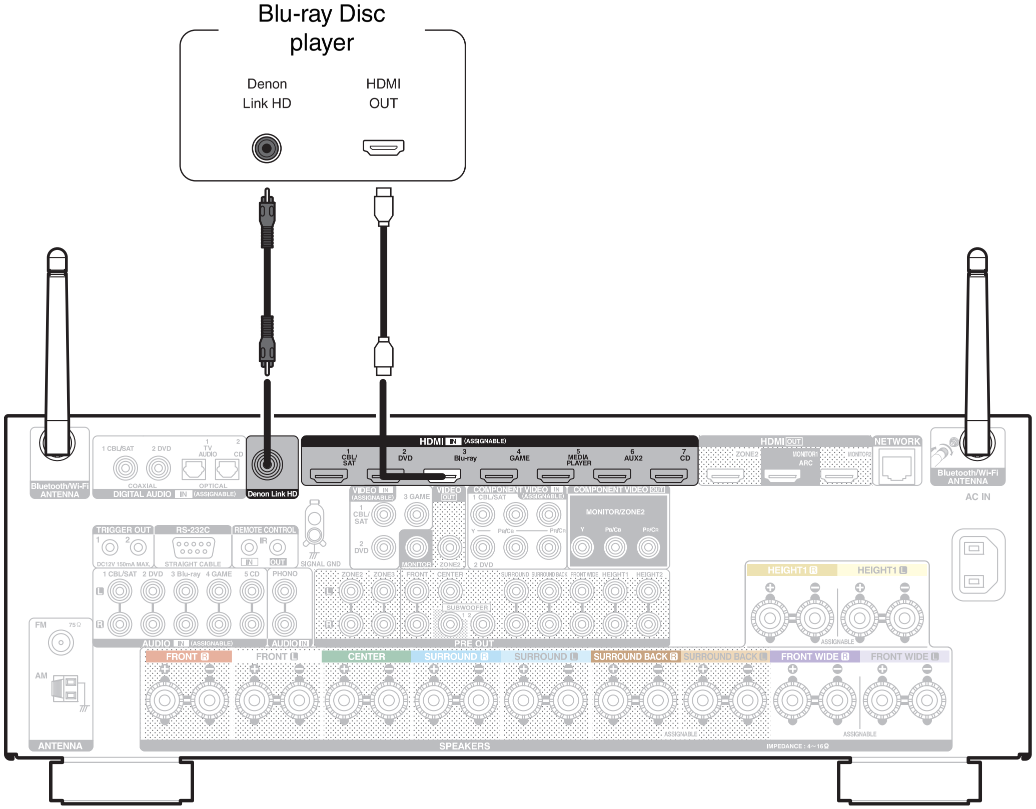
This explanation uses the connection with a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player as an example.
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.


(HDMI incompatible device)
DVD player
AUDIO
COAXIAL OUT
AUDIO OUT
R
L
VIDEO
VIDEO OUT
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
Y
PB
PR
Blu-ray Disc player
HDMI OUT
DVD player
HDMI OUT
or
or
R
L
HDMI IN (ASSIGNABLE)
DIGITAL AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
COMPONENT VIDEO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
AUDIO IN (ASSIGNABLE)
SPEAKERS
ANTENNA
AC IN

- When connecting a Blu-ray Disc player that is compatible with Denon Link HD, see “Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function” (☞ p. 77).

Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player compatible with the Denon Link HD function

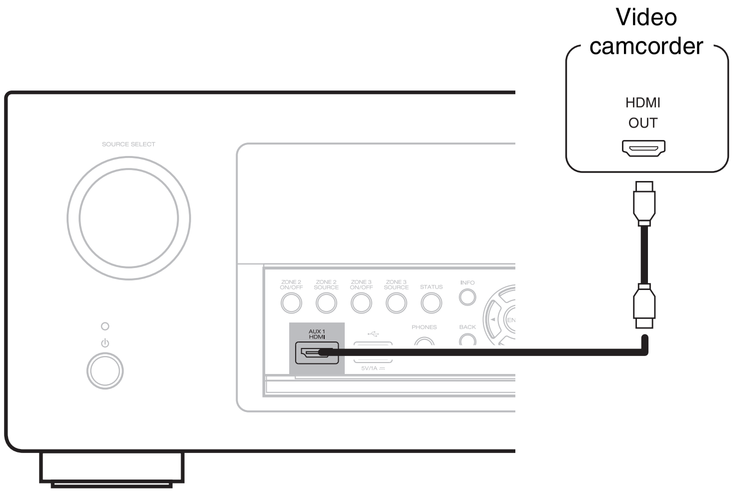
By making a Denon Link HD connection to a player compatible with the Denon Link HD function, you can enjoy higher quality playback compared with when only the HDMI connector connection is made.


Blu-ray Disc player
Denon Link HD
HDMI OUT
Denon Link HD
HDMI IN (ASSIGNABLE)
1 CBL/SAT
2 DVD
3 Blu-ray
4 GAME
5 MEDIA PLAYER
6 AUX2
7 CD
HDMI OUT
NETWORK
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi ANTENNA
AC IN
DIGITAL AUDIO
TRIGGER OUT
RS-232C
REMOTE CONTROL
AUDIO IN
PRE OUT
ANTENNA
SPEAKERS

- Both HDMI and Denon Link HD connections are required for this connection method.
- Set “Input Mode” on the menu to “Auto” or “HDMI”. (☞ p. 219)

Connecting a video camcorder or game console

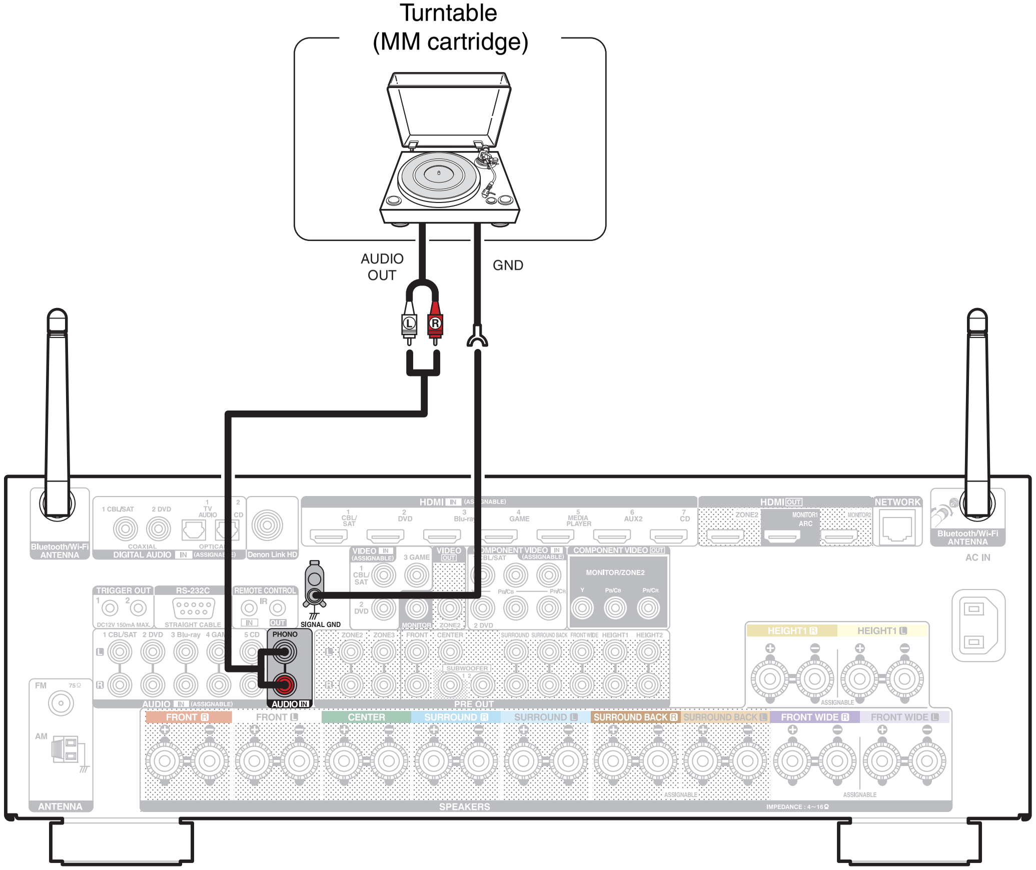
This explanation uses the connection with a video camcorders as an example.
Connect a playback device to this unit, such as a video camcorder or game console.


Video camcorder
HDMI OUT
SOURCE SELECT
ZONE 2 ON/OFF
ZONE 2 SOURCE
ZONE 3 ON/OFF
ZONE 3 SOURCE
STATUS
INFO
AUX 1 HDMI
PHONES
BACK
5V/1A

Connecting a turntable

This unit is compatible with turntables equipped with a moving magnet (MM) phono cartridge. When you connect to a turntable with a low output moving coil (MC) cartridge, use a commercially available MC head amp or a step-up transformer.

If you set this unit’s input source to “Phono” and you accidentally increase the volume without having a turntable connected, you may hear a hum noise from the speakers.

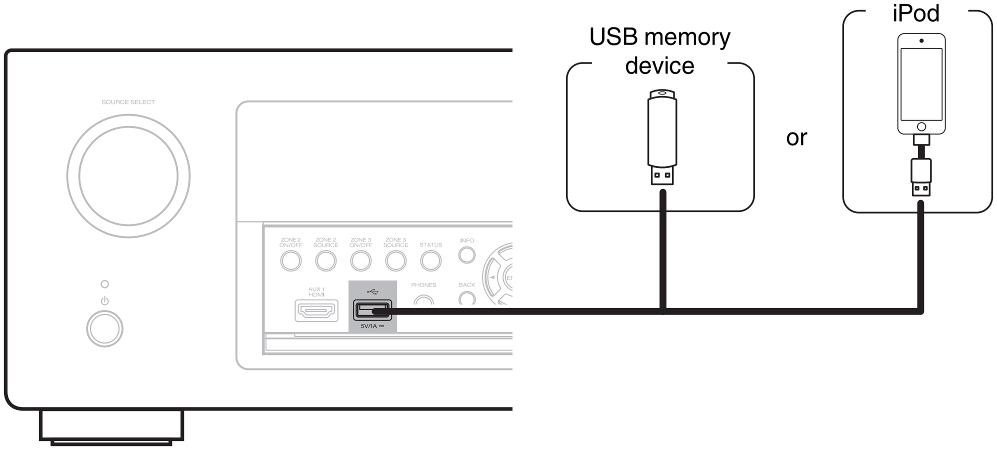


NOTE

- The earth terminal (SIGNAL GND) of this unit is not for safety grounding purposes. If this terminal is connected when there is a lot of noise, the noise can be reduced. Note that depending on the turntable, connecting the ground line may have the reverse effect of increasing noise. In this case, it is not necessary to connect the ground line.

Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port

To connect an iPod to this unit, use the USB adapter cable that was supplied with the iPod.
For operating instructions see “Playing an iPod” (☞ p. 92) or “Playing a USB memory device” (☞ p. 97).


USB memory device
or
iPod
SOURCE SELECT
ZONE 2 ON/OFF
ZONE 2 SOURCE
ZONE 3 ON/OFF
ZONE 3 SOURCE
STATUS
INFO
AUX 1 HDMI
PHONES
BACK
5V/1A

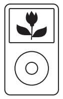
- Denon does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB hard disk drive (HDD) which came with an AC adapter, use that device’s supplied AC adapter.

NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit’s USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.

■ Supported iPod/iPhone models

• iPod classic


iPod classic
80GB

iPod classic
160GB (2007)

iPod classic
160GB (2009)

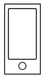
• iPod nano

iPod nano
3rd generation
(video)
4GB 8GB

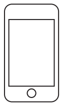
iPod nano
4th generation (video)
8GB 16GB

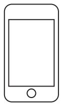
iPod nano
5th generation (video camera)
8GB 16GB

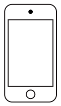
iPod nano
6th generation
8GB 16GB

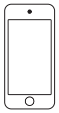

iPod nano
7th generation
16GB

• iPod touch

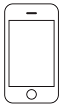

iPod touch
2nd generation
8GB 16GB 32GB

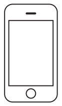

iPod touch
3rd generation
32GB 64GB

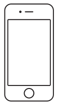

iPod touch
4th generation
8GB 16GB 32GB 64GB

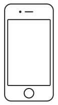

iPod touch
5th generation
16GB 32GB 64GB

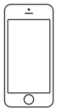
• iPhone


iPhone 3G
8GB 16GB


iPhone 3GS
8GB 16GB 32GB


iPhone 4
8GB 16GB 32GB


iPhone 4S
16GB 32GB 64GB


iPhone 5
iPhone 5c iPhone 5s
16GB 32GB 64GB

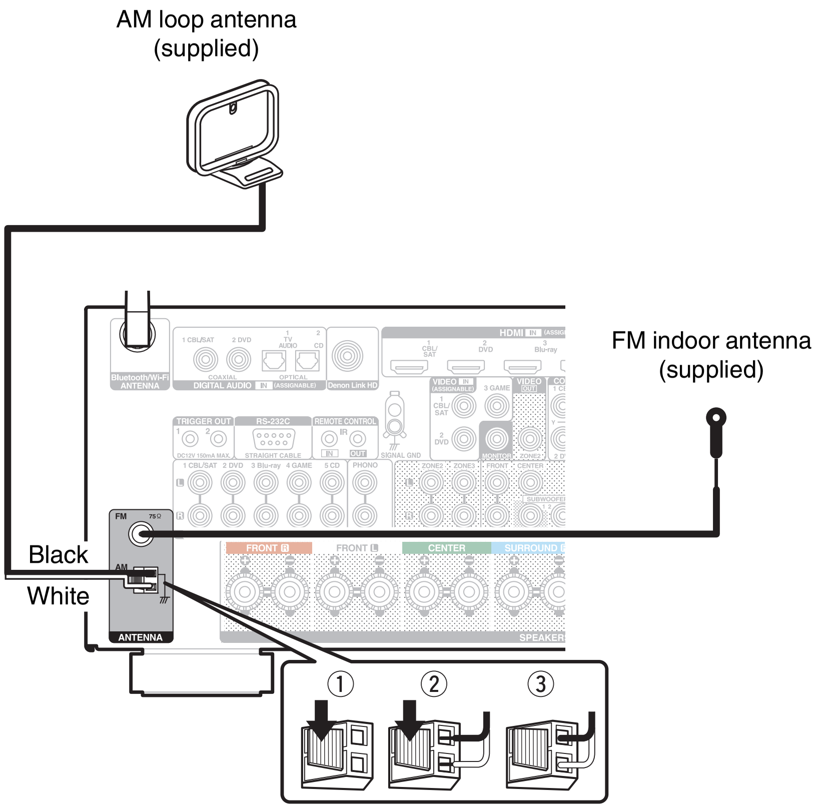
Connecting an FM/AM antenna

Connect the antenna, tune in to a broadcast and then move the antenna to the location where there is least noise. Then use tape, etc. to fix the antenna in this location. (“Listening to FM/AM broadcasts” (☞ p. 105))

- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

NOTE

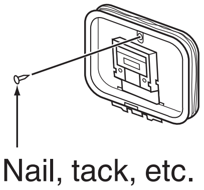
- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.


AM loop antenna
(supplied)
FM indoor antenna
(supplied)
Black
White
FM
AM
ANTENNA
①
②
③

Using the AM loop antenna

Suspending on a wall

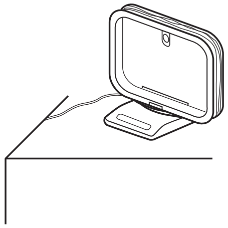
Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.


Nail, tack, etc.

Standing alone

Use the procedure shown above to assemble.

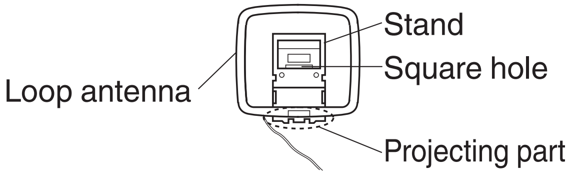
When assembling, refer to “AM loop antenna assembly”.

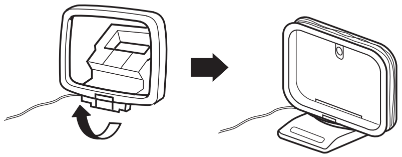


AM loop antenna assembly

1 **Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.**

2 **Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.**


Stand
Square hole
Loop antenna
Projecting part



Connecting to a home network (LAN)

This unit can connect to a network using a wired LAN or wireless LAN.

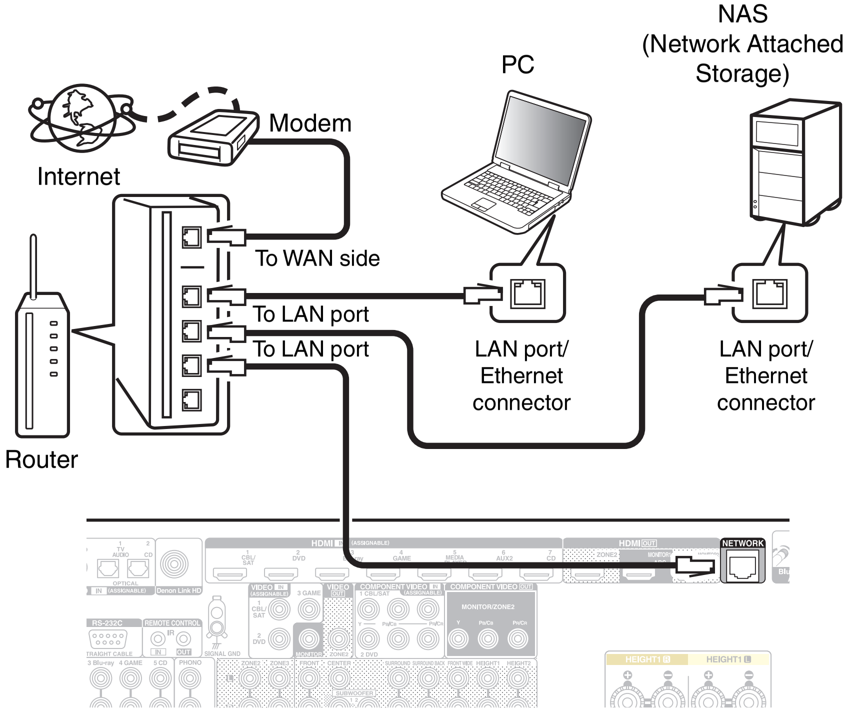
You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to enable various types of playback and operations as described below.

- Playback of network audio such as Internet Radio and from your media server(s)
- Using the Apple AirPlay function
- Operation on this unit via the network
- Firmware Update

For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.

Wired LAN

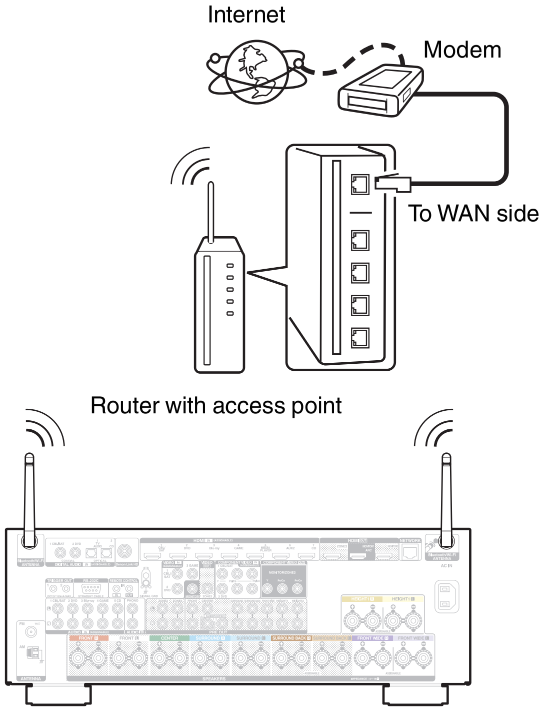
To make connections via wired LAN, use a LAN cable to connect the router to this unit as shown in the figure below.


NAS
(Network Attached
Storage)
PC
Internet
Modem
To WAN side
To LAN port
To LAN port
Router
LAN port/
Ethernet
connector
LAN port/
Ethernet
connector
NETWORK

Wireless LAN

When connecting to the network via wireless LAN, connect the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity connection to the rear panel and stand them upright.

See “Wi-Fi Setup” on how to connect to a wireless LAN router. (☞ p. 250)



- When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:
  - Built-in DHCP server
    This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
  - Built-in 100BASE-TX switch
    When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.
- Only use a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable (readily available at electronics stores). (CAT-5 or greater recommended)
- The normal shielded-type LAN cable is recommended.
  If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.
- When using a router that supports the WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) function, Wi-Fi connection can be carried out easily.
- When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, configure the IP address, etc. in “Network”. (☞ p. 249)

NOTE

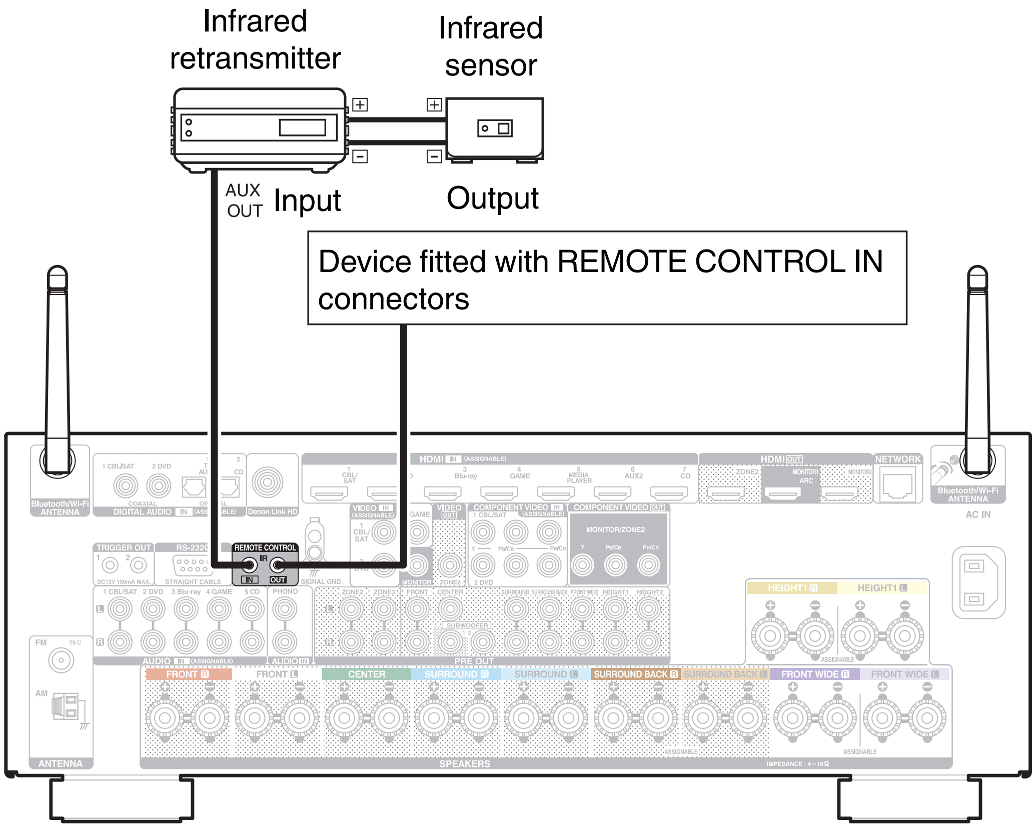
- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact your ISP or a computer shop for details.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE compatible router is required if your contracted line is not set using PPPoE.
- Do not connect a NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port / Ethernet connector on your computer.
- Various online services may be discontinued without prior notice.

Connecting an external control device

REMOTE CONTROL jacks

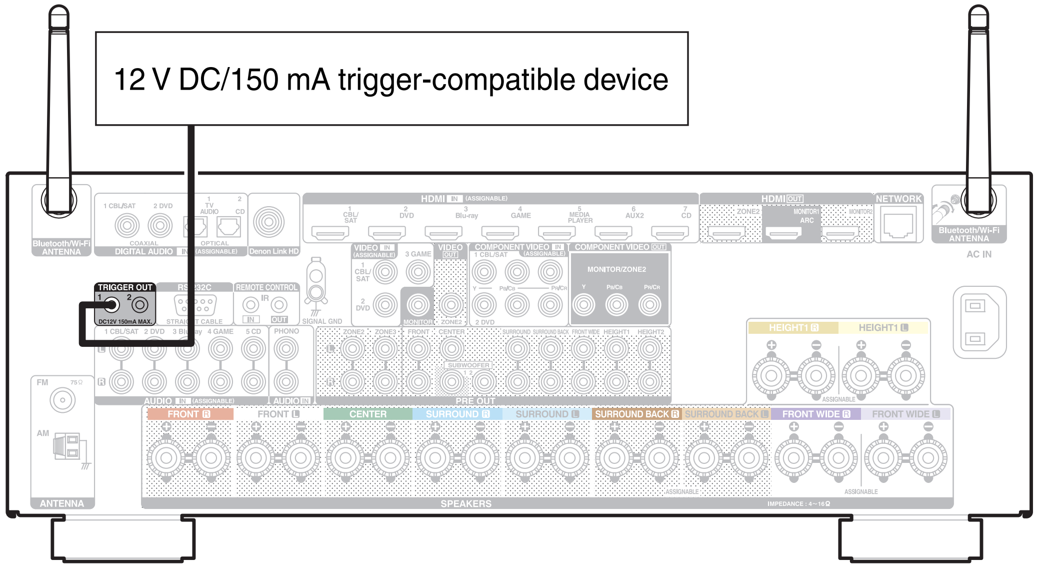
When this unit is installed in a location where the remote control signals cannot reach (installation in a cabinet etc.), it can still be controlled by the remote control by connecting a remote control receiver unit (sold separately).

You can also use it to remotely control ZONE2 and ZONE3 (separate room).


Infrared retransmitter
Infrared sensor
AUX OUT
Input
Output
Device fitted with REMOTE CONTROL IN connectors
REMOTE CONTROL
IR
IN
OUT

TRIGGER OUT jacks

When a device with TRIGGER IN jack is connected, the connected device’s power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit. The TRIGGER OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V DC /150 mA electrical signal.

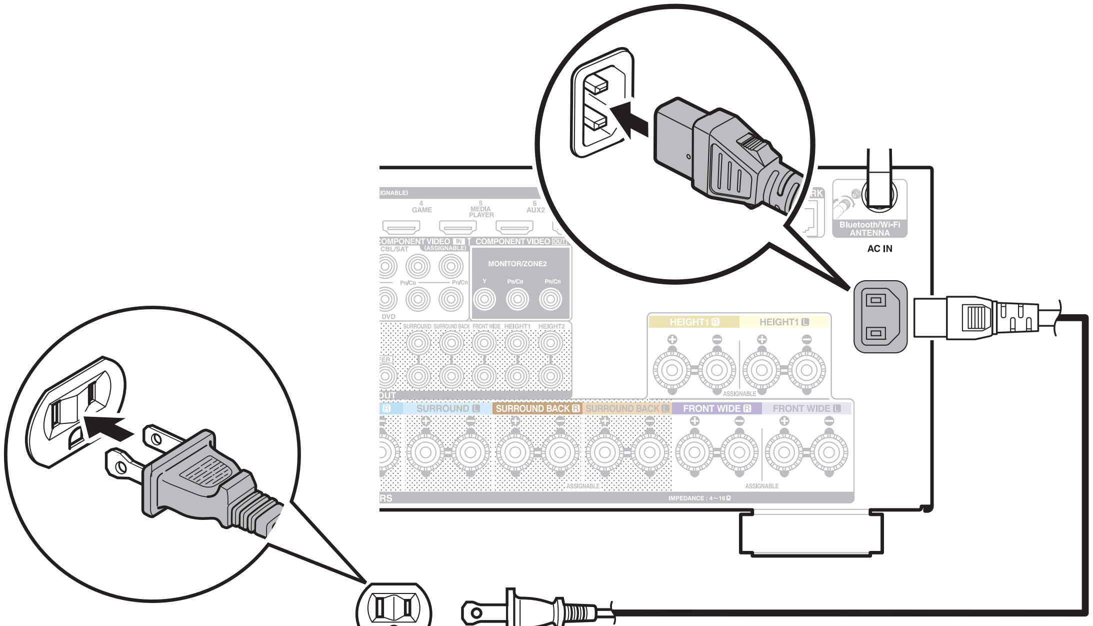

12 V DC/150 mA trigger-compatible device
TRIGGER OUT
DC12V 150mA MAX.
ANTENNA
SPEAKERS
PRE OUT
AC IN
NETWORK

NOTE

- Use a monaural mini-plug cable for connecting the TRIGGER OUT jacks. Do not use a stereo mini-plug cable.
- If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V DC/150 mA, or has shorted, the TRIGGER OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.

Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.


AC IN
Bluetooth/Wi-Fi ANTENNA
MONITOR/ZONE2
HEIGHT1
SURROUND
SURROUND BACK
FRONT WIDE
ASSIGNABLE

Power cord (supplied)

To household power outlet
(AC 120 V, 60 Hz)

■ Contents

Basic operation

Turning the power on 90
Selecting the input source 90
Adjusting the volume 91
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) 91
Selecting a sound mode 146

Playback a device

Playing a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player 91
Playing an iPod 92
Playing a USB memory device 97
Listening to music on a Bluetooth device 100
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts 105

Playback network audio/service

Listening to Internet Radio 113
Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS 117
Listening to Pandora® 121
Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio 128
AirPlay function 131
Spotify Connect function 134

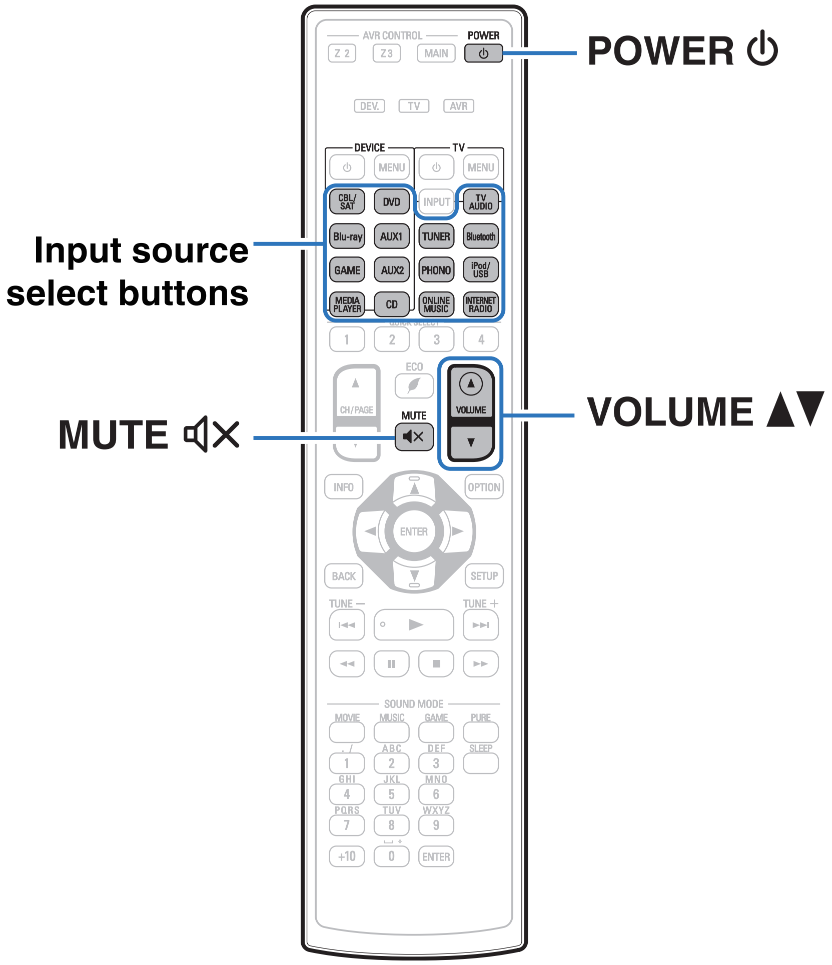
Convenience functions

Convenience functions 135
HDMI control function 161
Smart Menu function 162
Sleep timer function 164
Quick select plus function 166

Other functions

Web control function 169
Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room) 171

Basic operation


POWER ⏻
Input source select buttons
MUTE 🔇
VOLUME ▲▼
AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
TV
MENU
INPUT
CBL/SAT
DVD
TV AUDIO
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
SLEEP
ENTER
+10

Turning the power on

1 **Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.**

- You can press the input source select button when the unit is in standby mode to turn on the power.
- You can also switch the power to standby by pressing ⏻ on the main unit.

Selecting the input source

1 **Press the input source select button to be played back.**

The desired input source can be selected directly.

- You can also select the input source by turning SOURCE SELECT on the main unit.

Adjusting the volume

1 **Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.**

✎

- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.
- You can also adjust the master volume by turning MASTER VOLUME on the main unit.

Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)

1 **Press MUTE 🔇.**

  - MUTE indicator on the display flashes.
  - 🔇 appears on the TV screen.

✎

- The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” in the menu. (☞ p. 194)
- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE 🔇 again.

Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player

The following describes the procedure for playing DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player.

1 **Prepare for playback.**

  ① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
  ② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.

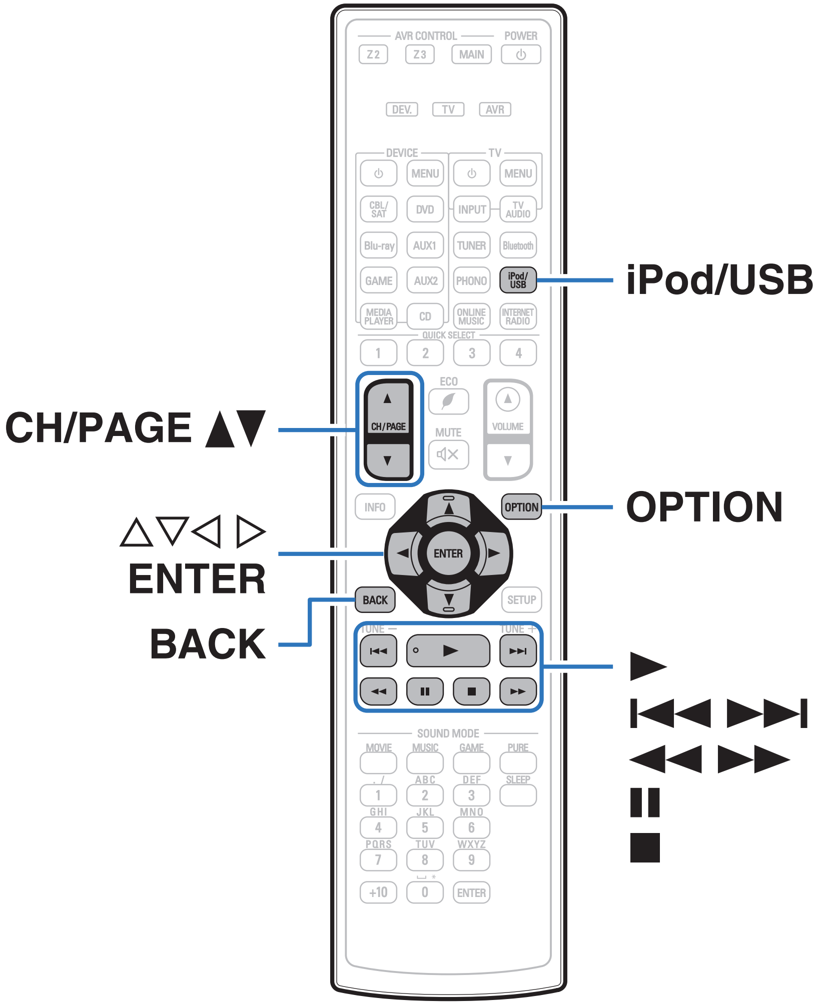
2 **Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.**

3 **Press DVD or Blu-ray to switch an input source for a player used for playback.**

4 **Play the DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player.**

■ Surround playback (☞ p. 146)

Playing an iPod



- You can use the USB cable provided with the iPod to connect the iPod with the unit’s USB port and enjoy music stored on the iPod.
- For information on the iPod models that can be played back with this unit, see “Supported iPod/iPhone models” (☞ p. 81).
- See “AirPlay function” (☞ p. 131) on how to play a music file saved on an iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes on this unit via the network.

Listening to music on an iPod

1 **Connect the iPod to the USB port.** (☞ p. 80)

2 **Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to “iPod/USB”.**

“Browse from iPod” is displayed on the display of this unit.

- Nothing is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Operate iPod itself while seeing the iPod screen to play back music.**

✎

- “iPod Browse Mode” has two modes, “From iPod” and “On-Screen”. The default setting is “From iPod” that operate the iPod itself while looking at the iPod screen.
- To change to “On-Screen”, where you perform operations while having the iPod information displayed on the TV screen, see “iPod Browse Mode settings” (☞ p. 94).

NOTE

- Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
- Note that Denon will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

This can be operated when the “iPod Browse Mode” is set to “From iPod”. (☞ p. 94)

- “iPod Browse Mode settings” (☞ p. 94)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

iPod Browse Mode settings

In this mode, various lists and screens during playback on the iPod are displayed on the TV screen.

This section describes the steps up to playing back tracks on the iPod in “On-Screen”.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “iPod/USB”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Select “iPod Browse Mode”, then press ENTER.**

The “iPod Browse Mode” screen is displayed.

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select “On-Screen”, then press ENTER.**

- Operations available for “On-Screen” and “From iPod” are listed below.

iPod Browse Mode		From iPod	On-Screen
Playable files	**Music file**	✓	✓
	Video file	*	
Active buttons	**Remote control unit (This unit)**	✓	✓
	iPod	✓	

*Only the sound is played.

4 **Use △▽ ▷ to select the file to be played, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀ ▶▶	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause
	(Press and hold) Stop
△ ▽	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

- The actions of the operation buttons may differ.

✎

- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title etc. each time the main unit’s STATUS is pressed during playback with “iPod Browse Mode” set to “On-Screen”.
- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as “.” (period).

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

This can be operated when the “iPod Browse Mode” is set to “On-Screen”. (☞ p. 94)

- “iPod Browse Mode settings” (☞ p. 94)
- “Performing repeat playback” (☞ p. 96)
- “Performing random playback” (☞ p. 96)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

Performing repeat playback

1. **Press OPTION with “iPod Browse Mode” set to “On-Screen”.**
   The option menu screen is displayed.
2. **Use Δ∇ to select “Repeat”, then press ENTER.**
3. **Use ◁ ▷ to select repeat playback mode.**

Off (Default) **:**	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
One:	A file being played is played repeatedly.
All:	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.

4. **Press ENTER.**
   The display returns to the playback screen.

- “Repeat” settings are stored for each input source.

Performing random playback

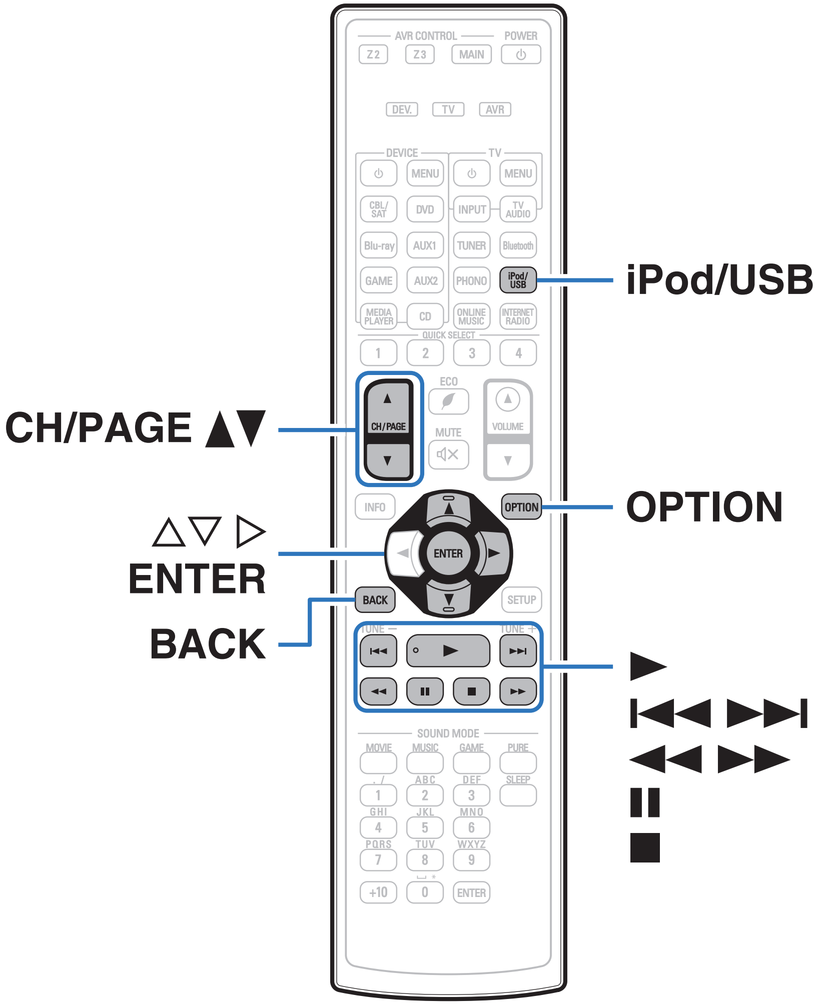
1. **Press OPTION with “iPod Browse Mode” set to “On-Screen”.**
   The option menu screen is displayed.
2. **Use Δ∇ to select “Random”, then press ENTER.**
3. **Use ◁ ▷ to select random playback mode.**

Off (Default)**:**	Disable random playback.
On:	Randomly play back all tracks in the current playback folder.

4. **Press ENTER.**
   The display returns to the playback screen.

- During random playback, each time playback of a track is completed, another track is randomly selected for playback from tracks in the folder. Therefore, it’s possible that you may hear a track played back more than once during random playback.
- “Random” settings are stored for each input source.

Playing a USB memory device

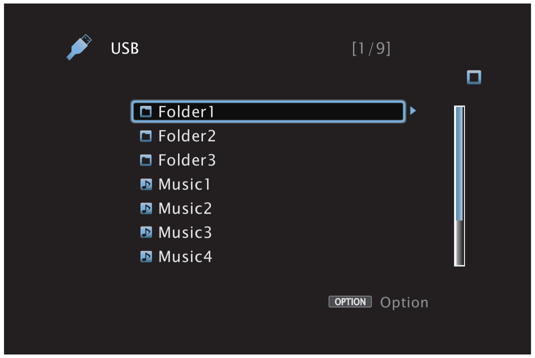


- Playing back music or viewing still picture (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device.
- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in “FAT16” or “FAT32” format.
- The audio/video format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.
  See “Playing back a USB memory devices” (☞ p. 306) for details.
  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **WAV**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**
  - **FLAC**
  - **ALAC**
  - **AIFF**
  - **DSD**
  - **JPEG**

Playing files stored on USB memory devices

1. **Connect the USB memory device to the USB port. (☞ p. 80)**

2. **Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to “iPod/ USB”.**



3. **Use △▽ ▷ to select the file to be played, then press ENTER.**
   Playback starts.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀ ▶▶	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause
	(Press and hold) Stop
△ ▽	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.
- This unit plays back picture (JPEG) files in the order in which they are stored in the folder.

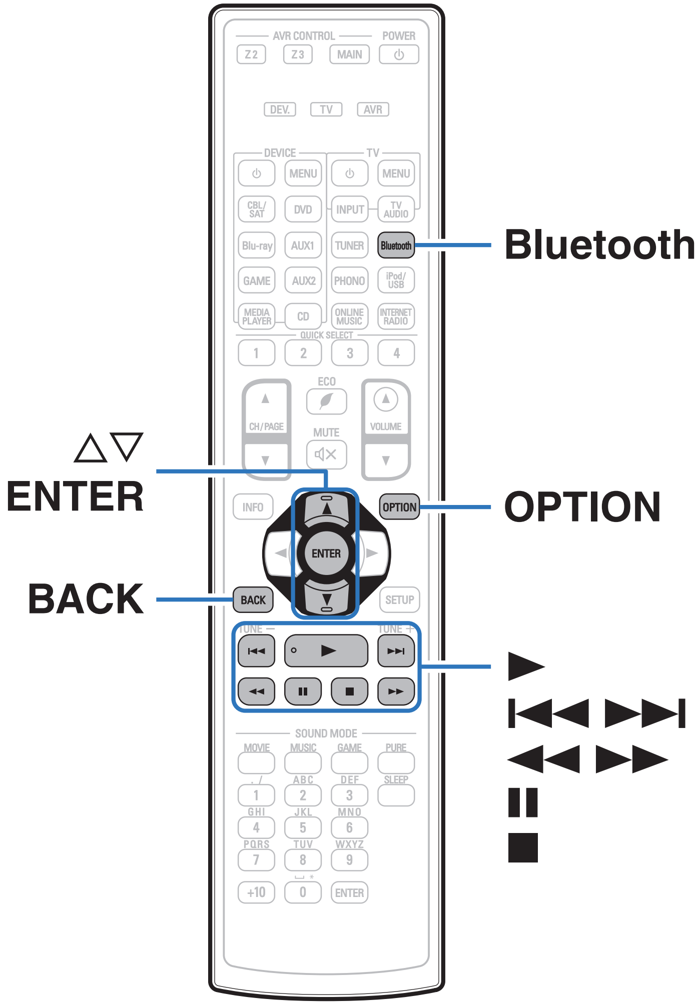
NOTE

- Note that Denon will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Performing repeat playback” (☞ p. 136)
- “Performing random playback” (☞ p. 136)
- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” (☞ p. 138)
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” (☞ p. 139)
- “Setting the Slideshow Interval” (☞ p. 140)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

Listening to music on a Bluetooth device



Music files stored on Bluetooth devices such as smartphones, digital music players, etc. can be enjoyed on this unit by pairing and connecting this unit with the Bluetooth device.

Communication is possible up to a range of about 32.8 ft/10 m.

NOTE

- To play back music from a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth device needs to support the A2DP profile.

Playing music from Bluetooth device

In order to enjoy music from a Bluetooth device on this unit, the Bluetooth device must first be paired with this unit.

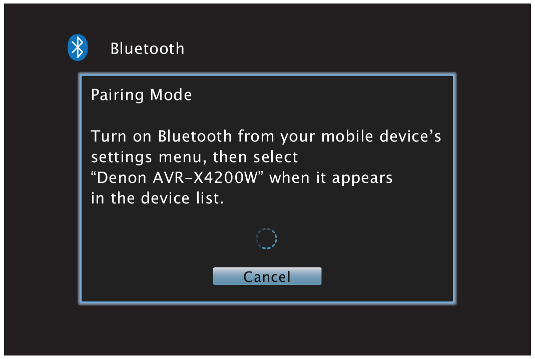
Once the Bluetooth device has been paired, it does not need to be paired again.

1 Prepare for playback.

① Connect the supplied external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity to the Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors on the rear panel. (☞ p. 25)

② Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

2 Press Bluetooth to switch the input source to "Bluetooth".



Turn on Bluetooth from your mobile device's settings menu, then select "Denon AVR-X4200W" when it appears in the device list.

When using for the first time, the unit will go into the pairing mode automatically and "Pairing..." will appear on the display of the unit.

3 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

4 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

Connect to the Bluetooth device while "Pairing" is being displayed on the display of the unit.

Perform the connection with the Bluetooth device close to the unit (about 3.3 ft/1 m).

5 When a number appears on the display of this unit, check that it is the same number as that shown on the screen of the Bluetooth device and then select "Pair" for both the Bluetooth device and the unit.

At the end of the pairing, the device name appears on the display of this unit.

6 Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.

- The Bluetooth device can also be operated with the remote control of this unit.
- The next time the input source is switched to Bluetooth, this unit automatically connects to the last Bluetooth device that was connected.

- Enter "0000" when the password is requested on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀ ▶▶	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause
	(Press and hold) Stop
△ ▽	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward

✎

- Press STATUS on this unit during playback to switch the display between Title name, Artist name, Album name, etc.
- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as “.” (period).

NOTE

- To operate the Bluetooth device with the remote control of this unit, the Bluetooth device needs to support the AVRCP profile.
- The remote control of this unit is not guaranteed to work with all Bluetooth devices.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth device, this unit outputs audio that is coupled to the volume setting on the Bluetooth device.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Pairing with other Bluetooth devices” (☞ p. 103)
- “Performing repeat playback” (☞ p. 136)
- “Performing random playback” (☞ p. 136)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

Pairing with other Bluetooth devices

Pair a Bluetooth device with this unit.

1 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

2 Press OPTION when the input source is “Bluetooth”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

3 Use △▽ to select “Pairing Mode”, then press ENTER.

The device will go into the pairing mode.

4 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

5 When a number appears on the display of this unit, check that it is the same number as that shown on the screen of the Bluetooth device and then select “Pair” for both the Bluetooth device and the unit.

At the end of the pairing, the device name appears on the display of this unit.

- This unit can be paired with a maximum of 8 Bluetooth devices. When a 9th Bluetooth device is paired, it will be registered in place of the oldest registered device.
- Enter “0000” when the password is requested on the screen of the Bluetooth device.
- Press and hold the Bluetooth on the remote control for at least 3 seconds to go into pairing mode.

Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device

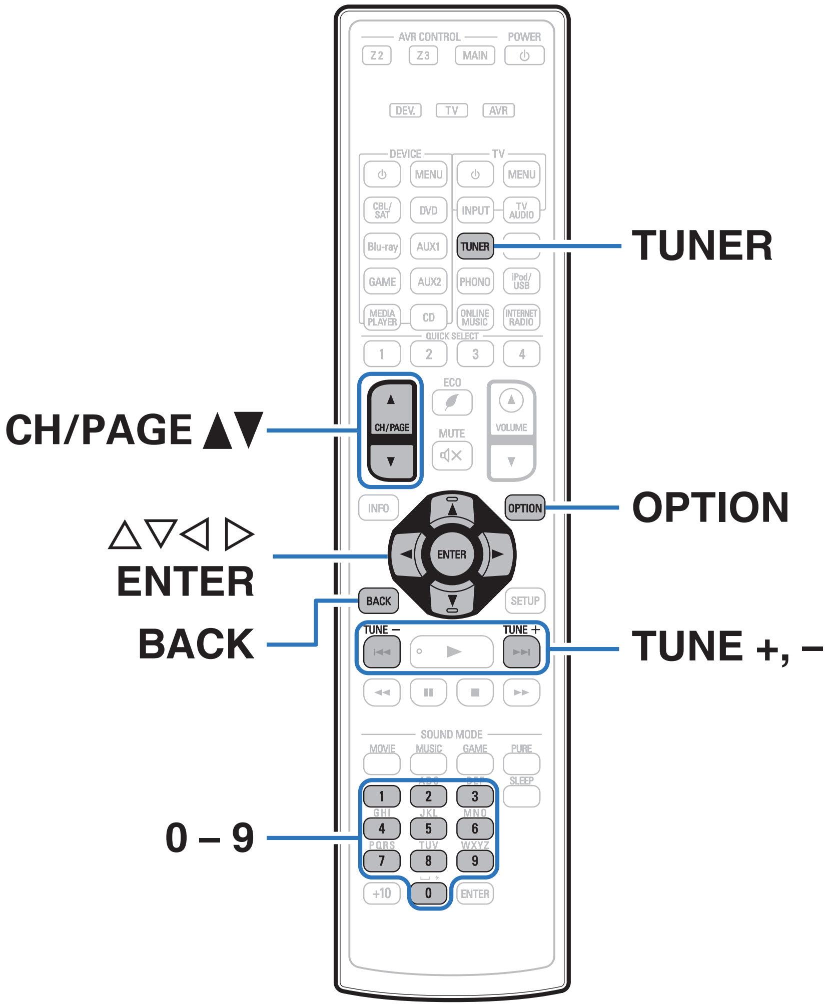
After pairing is completed, the Bluetooth device can be connected without performing any operations on this unit.

This operation also needs to be performed when switching the Bluetooth device for playback.

1. **If a Bluetooth device is currently connected, deactivate the Bluetooth setting of that device to disconnect it.**
2. **Activate the Bluetooth setting of the Bluetooth device to be connected.**
3. **Select this unit from the Bluetooth device list on your Bluetooth device.**
4. **Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.**

- When the power of this unit is turned on, the input source will be automatically switched to “Bluetooth” if a Bluetooth device is connected.
- When the “Network Control” setting of this unit is set to “Always On” and a Bluetooth device is connected with the unit in the standby state, the power of the unit will be turned on automatically. (☞ p. 255)

Listening to FM/AM broadcasts


TUNER
CH/PAGE ▲▼
OPTION
△▽◁ ▷
ENTER
BACK
TUNE +, –
0 – 9

You can use the built-in tuner of this unit to listen to FM broadcasts and AM broadcasts.

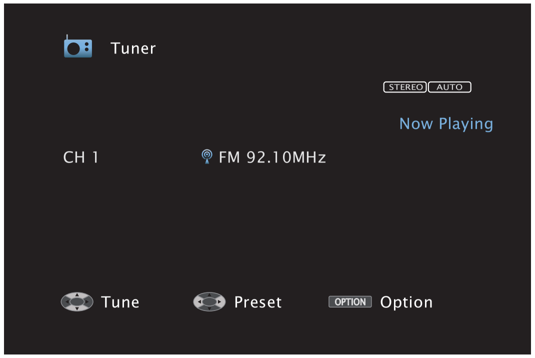
Make sure the FM antenna and AM loop antenna are connected to this unit first.

Listening to FM/AM broadcasts

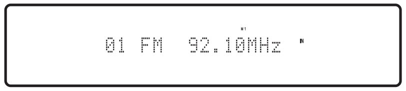
1 **Connect the antenna. (“Connecting an FM/AM antenna” (☞ p. 82))**

2 **Press TUNER to switch the input source to “Tuner”.**

[TV screen]



[Display of this unit]



3 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

4 **Use △▽ to select “FM/AM”, then press ENTER.**

This displays the reception band input screen.

5 **Use ◁ ▷ to select “FM” or “AM”, then press ENTER.**

FM:	When listening to an FM broadcast.
AM:	When listening to an AM broadcast.

6 **Press TUNE + or TUNE - to select the station you want listen to.**

Scanning is performed until it finds an available radio station. When it finds a radio station, it stops the scan automatically and tunes in.

- The modes for receiving FM broadcasts consists of “Auto” mode that automatically searches available broadcast stations and “Manual” mode that lets you tune in using buttons to change the frequency. The default setting is “Auto”. You can also use “Direct Tune” to tune in by entering the frequency directly.
  In “Auto” mode, you cannot tune in to radio stations if the reception is not good. If this is the case, then use the “Manual” mode or “Direct Tune” mode to tune in.

Operation buttons	Function
TUNE +, –	Selects the radio station (up/down)
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Selects preset radio stations
△ ▽	Selects the radio station (up/down)
◁ ▷	Selects preset radio stations
0 – 9	Preset channel selection/Direct frequency tuning

Operations accessible through the option menu

- "Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)" (☞ p. 107)
- "Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)" (☞ p. 108)
- "Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)" (☞ p. 108)
- "Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)" (☞ p. 109)
- "Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)" (☞ p. 110)
- "Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)" (☞ p. 111)
- "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)" (☞ p. 141)
- "Adjusting the tone (Tone)" (☞ p. 142)
- "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" (☞ p. 143)
- "Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)" (☞ p. 145)

Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)

You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is "Tuner".**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select "Direct Tune", then press ENTER.**

The screen that lets you enter the frequency is displayed.

3 **Use △▽ or 0 – 9 to select a number and press ▷.**

- If ◁ is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.

4 **Repeat step 3 and enter the frequency of the radio station you want to hear.**

5 **When setting is completed, press ENTER.**

The preset frequency is tuned in.

Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)

You can change the mode for tuning into FM and AM broadcasts. If you cannot tune in automatically with “Auto” mode, change the mode to “Manual” and tune in manually.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Tune Mode”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select the tune mode, then press ENTER.**

Auto:	Automatically search for and tune to a receivable radio station.
Manual:	Manually change the frequency one step at a time each time the button is pressed.

Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)

A maximum of 56 radio stations can be automatically preset.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Auto Preset Memory”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Press ENTER.**

The unit starts to tune in to radio stations automatically and preset them.

- When presetting is completed, “Completed” is displayed for about 5 seconds and the option menu screen turns off.

- The preset memory is overwritten.

Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)

Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily.
Up to 56 stations can be preset.

1 Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset. ("Listening to FM/AM broadcasts" (☞ p. 106))

2 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

3 Use △▽ to select "Preset Memory", then press ENTER.

The list of already preset channels is displayed.

4 Use △▽ or 0 – 9 to select the channel you want to preset, then press ENTER.

The current broadcast station that is preset.

- To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

Channel	Default settings
1 – 8	92.10 / 92.30 / 92.50 / 92.70 / 93.10 / 93.50 / 93.70 / 94.10 MHz
9 – 16	94.30 / 94.50 / 94.70 / 94.90 / 95.10 / 95.30 / 95.50 / 95.70 MHz
17 – 24	98.10 / 98.30 / 98.50 / 98.70 / 98.90 / 99.10 / 100.10 / 100.30 MHz
25 – 32	100.50 / 100.70 / 100.90 / 101.10 / 101.30 / 101.50 / 101.70 / 101.90 MHz
33 – 40	103.10 / 103.30 / 103.50 / 103.70 / 103.90 / 104.10 / 104.30 / 104.50 MHz
41 – 48	104.70 / 104.90 / 105.10 / 105.30 / 105.50 / 105.70 / 105.90 / 106.10 MHz
49 – 56	106.30 / 106.50 / 106.70 / 106.90 / 107.10 / 107.30 / 107.50 / 107.90 MHz

Listening to preset stations

1 Use CH/PAGE ▲▼ or 0 – 9 to select the desired preset channel.

Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)

You can set the name to the preset broadcast station or change it.
Up to eight characters can be input.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Preset Name”, then press ENTER.**

The Preset Name screen is displayed.

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of the broadcast station you want to name.**

4 **Use △▽ to select the broadcast station you want to name, then press ENTER.**

5 **Use △▽ to select a name label, then press ENTER.**

The screen that lets you edit the Preset Name is displayed.

- If you select “Set Defaults”, then the unit returns to displaying the frequency.

6 **Enter the characters, then press “OK”.**

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).

7 **Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.**

Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)

Perform auto preset memory to save all the broadcasting stations that can be received in the memory. Selecting a broadcast station becomes easier by skipping unnecessary memories.

1 **Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Preset Skip”, then press ENTER.**

The “Preset Skip” screen is displayed.

3 **❑ To set the stations you want to skip by groups**

① Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.
② Press △ to select “Set No.∗ – ∗ to Skip”, then press ENTER.
Skip all the broadcast stations that are included in the selected group “∗-∗”.
(∗ is the selected group number.)

❑ To set the stations you want to skip by stations

① Use ◁ ▷ to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.
② Use △▽ to select the broadcast station you want to skip.
③ Use ◁ ▷ to select “Skip”.
The station you selected is not displayed.

4 **Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.**

Cancelling Preset Skip

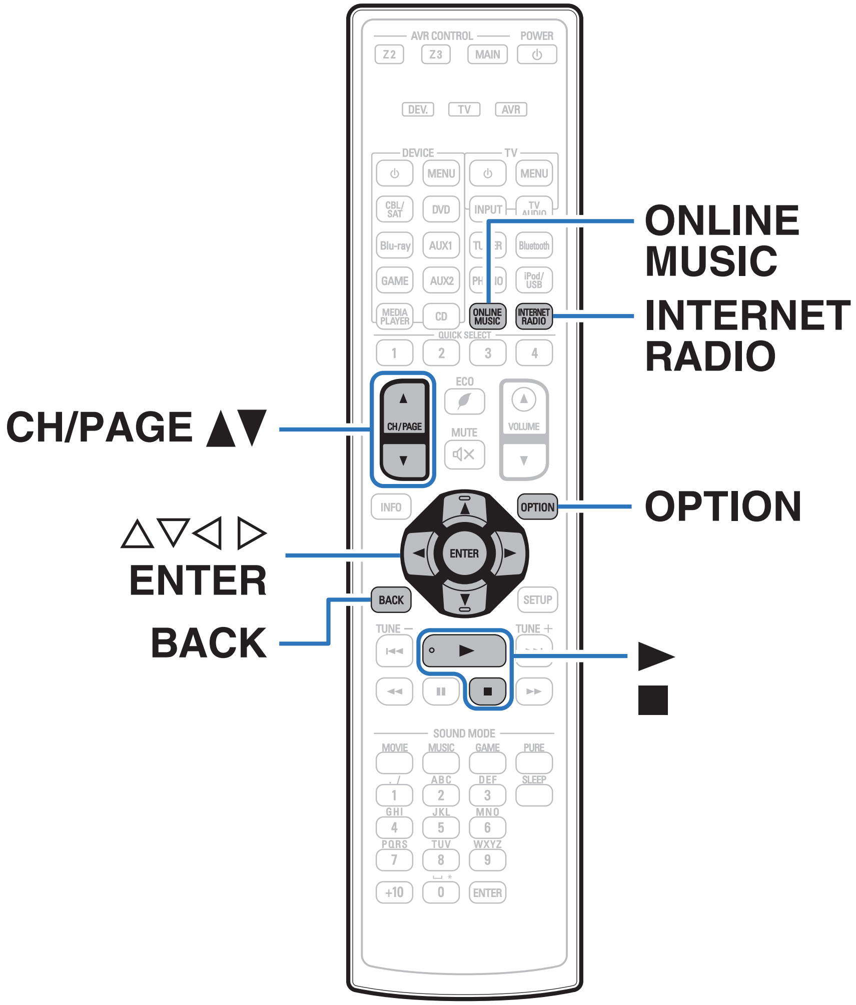
1. **While the “Preset Skip” screen is displayed, use ◁ ▷ to select a group containing a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.**
2. **Use △▽ to select a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.**
3. **Use ◁ ▷ to select “On”.**

   The skip is cancelled.

NOTE

- “Preset Skip” cannot be cancelled for groups.

Listening to Internet Radio



- Internet Radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet Radio stations from around the world can be received.
- The Internet radio station list on this unit the database service provided by vTuner radio station.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.
  See “Playing back Internet Radio” (☞ p. 309) for details.
  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**

Listening to Internet Radio

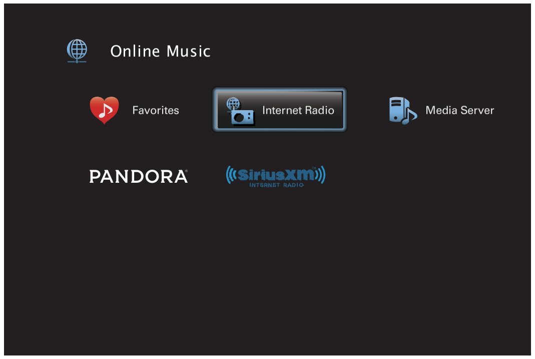
1 **Prepare for playback.**

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 84))

2 **Press ONLINE MUSIC.**

- You can also press INTERNET RADIO to select the input source "Internet Radio" directly.

3 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Internet Radio", then press ENTER.**



4 **Use △▽ to select the search method for the radio station that you wish to playback and then press ENTER.**

Name of country:	Select the various regions. Displays typical Internet Radio stations.
Search Stations :	Displays all Internet Radio stations that this unit can tune in to.
Search Podcasts :	Displays Internet Radio stations in the podcasts that this unit can tune in to.
Recommended Stations :	Displays recommended Internet Radio stations.
radiodenon.com :	Displays Internet Radio stations added to favorites in vTuner. For instructions on how to add to favorites in vTuner, see "Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites" (☞ p. 116).
Recently Played :	Displays recently played Internet Radio stations. Up to 20 stations can be stored in "Recently Played".
Search by Keyword:	Displays Internet Radio stations searched by keyword. For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (☞ p. 183).

5 Use △▽ ▷ to select the station, then press ENTER.

Playback starts once buffering reaches “100%”.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
■	Stop
ENTER	(Press and hold) Stop
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

✎

- The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the main unit’s STATUS is pressed.
- Any characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with “.” (period).

NOTE

- The radio station database service may be suspended or be otherwise unavailable without notice.

Playing the last played Internet Radio station

1 Press INTERNET RADIO.

The source switches to “Internet Radio” and the last played radio station plays.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” (☞ p. 138)
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” (☞ p. 139)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites

There are many Internet Radio stations in the world, and this unit can tune into these stations. But finding the radio station you want to hear may be difficult, because there are too many stations. If this is the case, then please use vTuner, an Internet Radio station search website specifically designed for this unit. You can use your PC to search Internet Radio stations and add them as your favorites. This unit can play radio stations added to vTuner.

1 **Check the MAC address of this unit. (“Information” (☞ p. 249))**

- The MAC address is necessary when you create an account for vTuner.

2 **Use your PC to access the vTuner website (http://www.radiodenon.com).**

3 **Enter the MAC address of this unit, then click “Go”.**

4 **Enter your E-mail address and a password of your choice.**

5 **Select the search criteria (genre, region, language, etc.) of your choice.**

- You can also enter a keyword to search for a station you want to hear.

6 **Select the radio station of your choice from the list, and then click the Add to Favorites icon.**

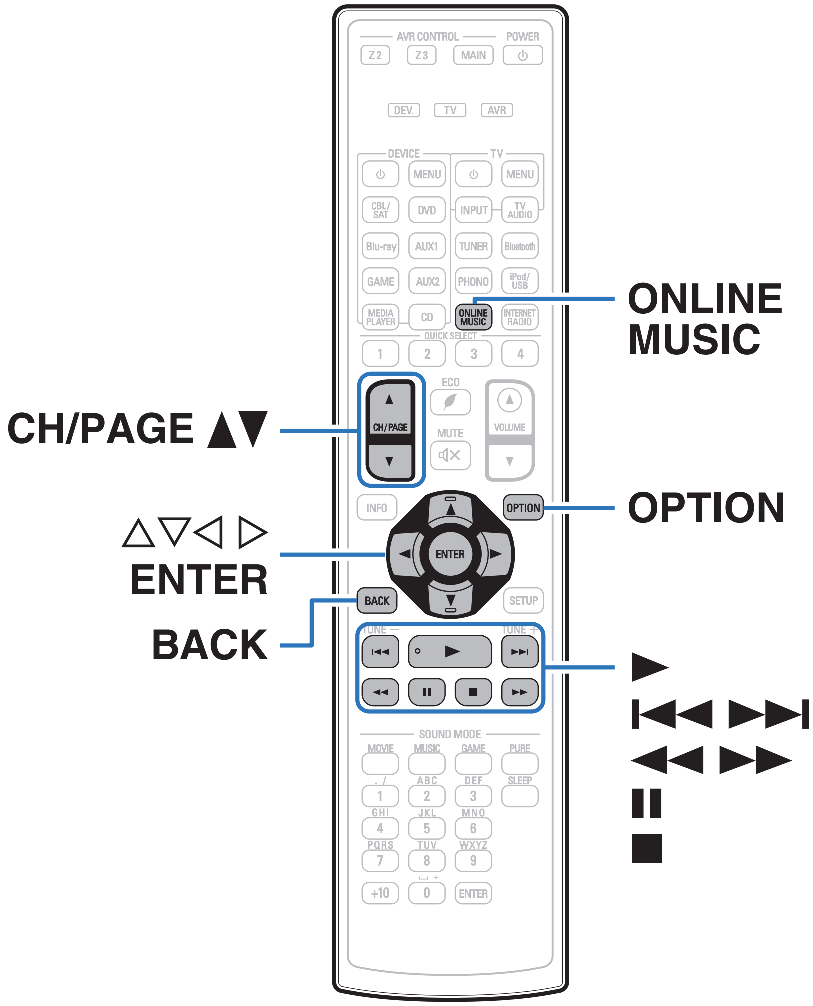
7 **Enter the name of the favorite group, then click “Go”.**

A new favorite group that includes the selected radio station is created.

- Internet Radio stations added to favorites in vTuner can be played from “radiodenon.com” with this unit. (☞ p. 114)

- You can also add a radio station that is not in the vTuner list.

Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS



- This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) stored on a PC and on Network Attached Storage (NAS) that supports DLNA.
- The network audio playback function of this unit connects to the server using technologies shown below.
  Windows Media Player Network Sharing Service
- The audio/video format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.
  For details, see “Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS” (☞ p. 308).
  - **WMA**
  - **MP3**
  - **WAV**
  - **MPEG-4 AAC**
  - **FLAC**
  - **ALAC**
  - **AIFF**
  - **DSD**
  - **JPEG**

Applying media sharing settings

Here, we apply the settings to share music files stored on a PC and NAS on the network.
If you are using a Media Server, be sure to apply this setting first.

■ When using Windows Media Player 12 (Windows 7 / Windows 8)

1. **Start up Windows Media Player 12 on the PC.**
2. **Select “More streaming options...” in the “Stream”.**
3. **Select “Allowed” in the “Denon AVR-X4200W” drop-down list.**
4. **Select “Allowed” in the drop-down list for “Media programs on this PC and remote connections...”.**
5. **Follow the screen instructions to end the setting.**

■ When using Windows Media Player 11

1. **Start up Windows Media Player 11 on the PC.**
2. **Select “Media Sharing” in the “Library”.**
3. **Click the “Share my media” check box, select “Denon AVR-X4200W”, and then click “Allow”.**
4. **As you did in step 3, select the icon of the device (other PCs and mobile devices) you want to use as a media controller, and then click “Allow”.**
5. **Click “OK” to finish.**

■ Sharing media stored in NAS

Change settings on the NAS to allow this unit and other devices (PCs and mobile devices) used as media controllers to access the NAS. For details, see the owner’s manual that came with the NAS.

Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

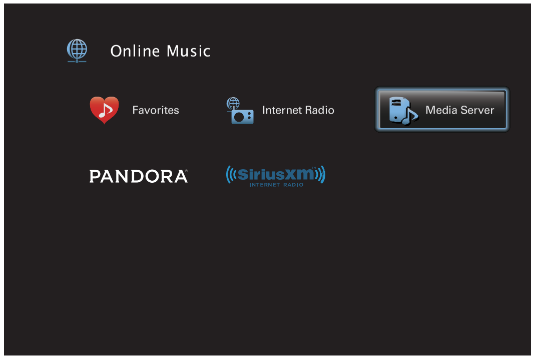
Use this procedure to play music files, image files or playlists.

1 **Prepare for playback.**

① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 84))
② Prepare the computer. (☞Computer's operating instructions)

2 **Press ONLINE MUSIC.**

3 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Media Server", then press ENTER.**



4 **Use △▽ to select the server including the file to be played, then press ENTER.**

5 **Use ▽△ ▷ to select the file, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
⏮ ⏭	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀ ▶▶	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause
	(Press and hold) Stop
△ ▽	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the main unit’s STATUS is pressed.
- When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
- If you use Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.
- WMA Lossless files can be played when using a server supporting transcoding, such as Windows Media Player (Ver.11 or later).
- This unit plays back picture (JPEG) files in the order in which they are stored in the folder.

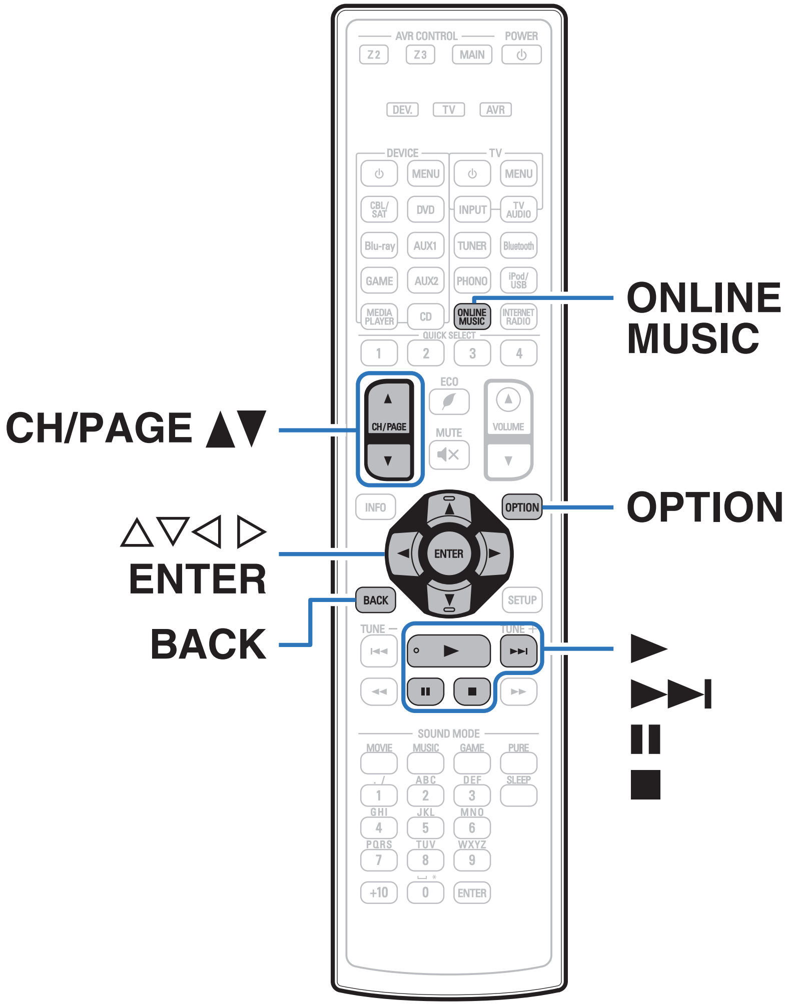
NOTE

- When playing back music files with your PC or NAS connected through wireless LAN, audio may be interrupted depending on your wireless LAN environment. In this case, connect using a wired LAN.
- Depending on the size of the still picture (JPEG) file, some time may be required for the file to be displayed.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Performing repeat playback” (☞ p. 136)
- “Performing random playback” (☞ p. 136)
- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” (☞ p. 138)
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” (☞ p. 139)
- “Setting the Slideshow Interval” (☞ p. 140)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

Listening to Pandora®



Pandora is an automated music recommendation and Internet Radio service created by the Music Genome Project.

To listen to Pandora you will need a free Pandora account.

If you do not have a Pandora account, you can create one at www.pandora.com or from the Pandora smartphone application.

Playback of Pandora in this unit requires the Pandora account to be linked to the unit. Therefore, access http://www.pandora.com/denon from your personal computer and perform the linkage.

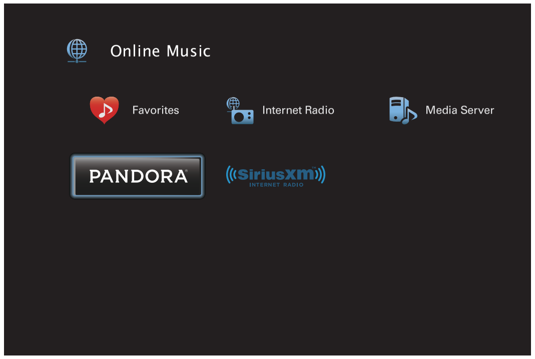
Listening to Pandora®

1 **Prepare for playback.**

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 84))

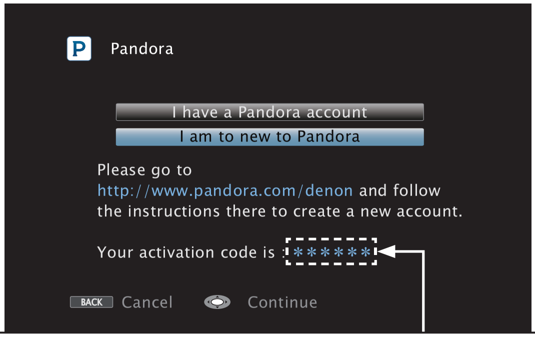
2 **Press ONLINE MUSIC.**

3 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "Pandora", then press ENTER.**


Online Music
Favorites
Internet Radio
Media Server
PANDORA
((SiriusXM))
INTERNET RADIO

4 **If you have a Pandora account, use △▽ to select "I have a Pandora account", then press ENTER.**

- If you do not have a Pandora account, to select "I am to new to Pandora", then press ENTER. The URL of Pandora and activation code are displayed. Access the Pandora web page from your PC and register the displayed activation code and account information. Then press ENTER.


P Pandora
I have a Pandora account
I am to new to Pandora

Please go to http://www.pandora.com/denon and follow the instructions there to create a new account.

Your activation code is ******

BACK Cancel
Continue

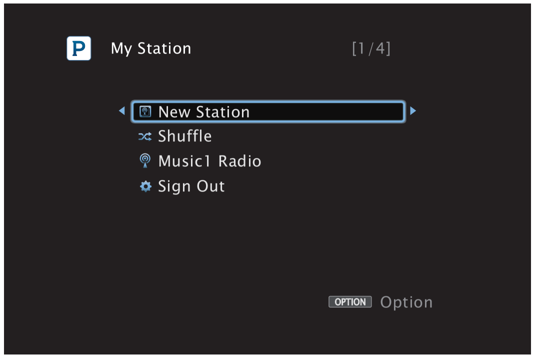
This is an identification code required to register your purchased product to the Pandora service.
This code is used to obtain your account.

5 Input “Email address” and “Password”.

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).
- Press BACK to cancel the input. When “Cancel input?” is displayed, select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

6 After inputting the “Email address” and “Password”, select “OK”, then press ENTER.

If the “Email address” and “Password” match, the top menu for Pandora is displayed.


P
My Station
[1 /4]
New Station
Shuffle
Music1 Radio
Sign Out
OPTION Option

Creating a new station

You can create up to 100 radio stations.

1. **Use ∆∇ to select “New Station”, then press ENTER.**
2. **Input a track or artist name, then press “OK”.**
   - For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).
3. **Use ∆∇ to select “Search by Artist” or “Search by Track”, then press ENTER.**

   You can search and display a list by track or artist.
4. **Use ∆∇, select a file from the list, press ENTER.**

   New station is created.

- Your new station will play music with similar qualities to the artist or track you entered.

Operation buttons	Function
►	Playback
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
►►❙	Skip to next track
ENTER	Playback / Pause
	(Press and hold) Stop
∇	Skip to next track
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

Listening to an existing station

1. **Use △▽ and select the radio station that you want to listen to, then press ENTER.**

- You can skip up to 6 tracks that are being played back within 1 hour.

Listening to created radio stations at random

1. **Use △▽ to select “Shuffle”, then press ENTER.**
   Created radio stations are selected at random, and tracks are streamed.

Giving feedback and managing stations

You can personalize your stations by providing feedback.

1 **Press ▷ while a track is playing.**

The Pandora menu screen is displayed.

I like this track :	Press when you like the track that is being played. Playback a favorite track. Display the 👍 (Thumbs up) icon.
I don’t like this track :	Press when you don’t like the track that is being played. Delete that track from the radio station. Display the 👎 (Thumbs down) icon.
Why is this track playing? :	Displays the reason why Pandora selected this track.
Create station :	Creates a station for the track or artist being played.
Bookmark this track :	Bookmarks the artist currently being played. You can check on a computer or iPhone etc. For details, see the Pandora web page.
I’m tired of this track :	Press when you don’t like the track that is being played. The track will not be played for 1 month.
Delete this station :	Press when you want to delete the station that is being played.

Sign Out

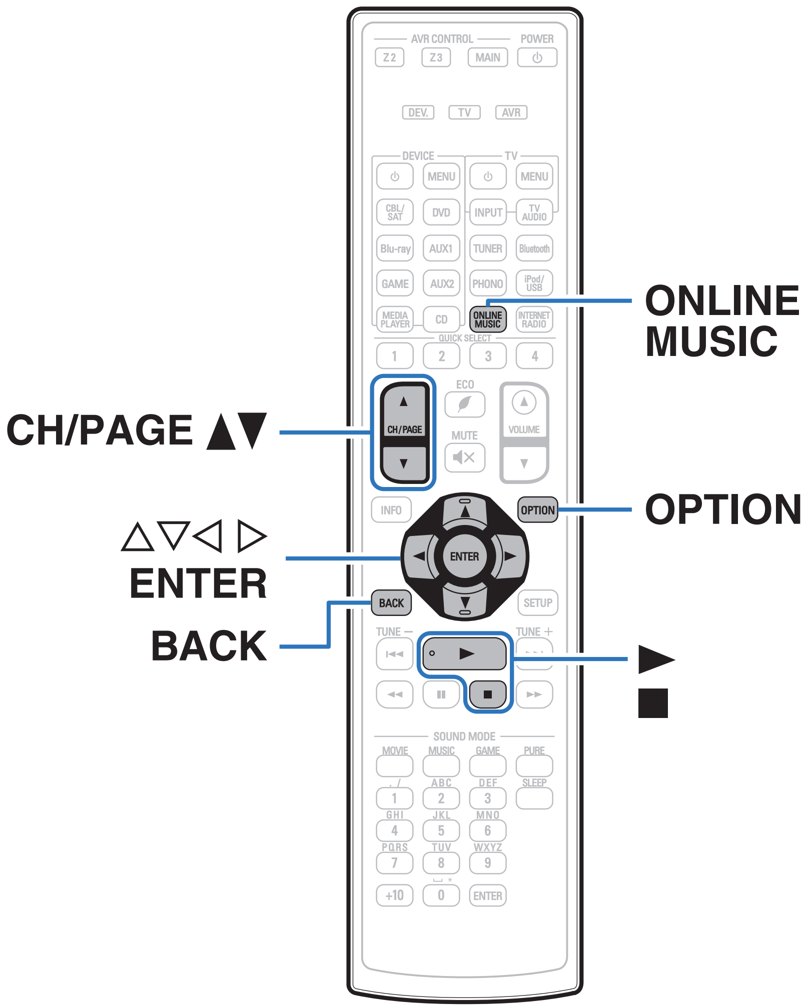
Disassociate this unit from your Pandora account.

1. **Use △▽ to select “Sign Out”, then press ENTER.**
2. **When the popup menu appears, use ◁ ▷ to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.**

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio



You can access SiriusXM to enjoy access to a wide range of unique content.

An All Access package lets you listen to SiriusXM on your computer, smartphone, tablet or Lynx Portable.

For details, see the SiriusXM homepage.
http://www.siriusxm.com

Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio

Over 155 channels commercial-free music, plus play-by-play sports, exclusive talk, comedy and entertainment.

1 Prepare for playback.

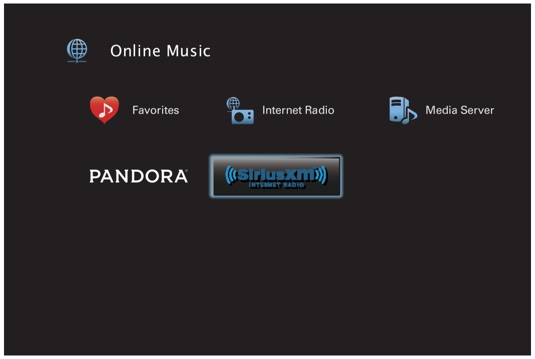
① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 84))

② Access the following website from your PC and obtain a SiriusXM account.
http://www.siriusxm.com

- If you already have SiriusXM Internet Radio credentials, select "Sign in" in step 4 and enter your SiriusXM username and password. If you need to setup a SiriusXM account or Internet Radio credentials, visit http://care.siriusxm.com

2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

3 Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "SiriusXM", then press ENTER.



4 Select "Sign in" and then press ENTER.

5 Input "Username" and "Password".

- For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (☞ p. 183).

6 Select the "Sign in", then press ENTER.

The top menu of SiriusXM is displayed.

7 **Use △▽ to select the genre, then press ENTER.**

8 **Use △▽ to select the file, then press ENTER.**

The selected file is displayed.

Operation buttons	Function
►	Playback
■	Stop
ENTER	Playback
	(Press and hold) Stop
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

Sign Out

Disassociate this unit from your SiriusXM account.

1 **Use △▽ to select “Sign Out”, then press ENTER.**

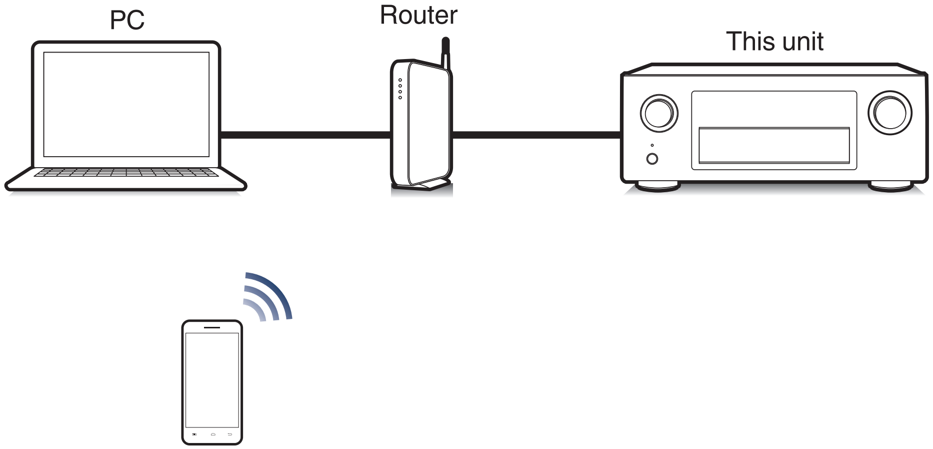
2 **When the popup menu appears, use ◁ ▷ to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.**

■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 142)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 145)

AirPlay function

Music files stored on your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes can be played on this unit via the network.



- ▣ is displayed on the menu screen while AirPlay is being operated.
- Source input will be switched to “Online Music” when AirPlay playback is started.
- You can stop AirPlay playback by pressing ◁ or choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press STATUS on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.

Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad

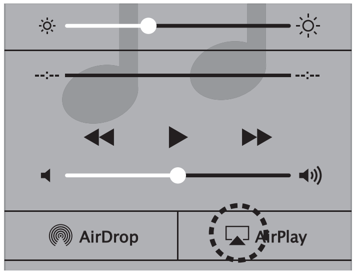
If you update your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” directly to this unit.

1. **Connect your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad Wi-Fi to the same network as this unit.**
   - For details, see your device’s manual.

2. **Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.**

   ▲ is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

3. **Tap the AirPlay icon ▲.**



4. **Select the speaker (devices) you want to use.**

Playing iTunes music with this unit

1. **Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.**

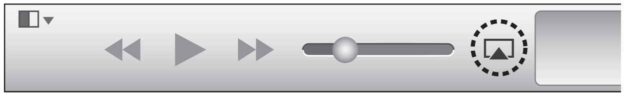
2. **Turn this unit ON.**

   Set “Network Control” to “Always On” for this unit. (☞ p. 255)

NOTE

- When “Network Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

3. **Start iTunes and click the AirPlay icon ▲ to select the main unit.**



4. **Choose a song and click play in iTunes.**

   The music will stream to this unit.

Selecting multiple speakers (devices)

It is possible to play iTunes songs on your home’s AirPlay compatible speakers (devices) other than those of this unit.

1 Click the AirPlay icon ▭ and select “Multiple”.

2 Check the speakers you want to use.

NOTE

- In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level.
  You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit

With this unit’s remote control unit, you can perform iTunes song play, pause, and auto search (cue) operations.

1 Select the “Edit” - “Preferences...” in the iTunes menu.

2 Select “Devices” in the iTunes setting window.

3 Check “Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers”, and then click “OK”.

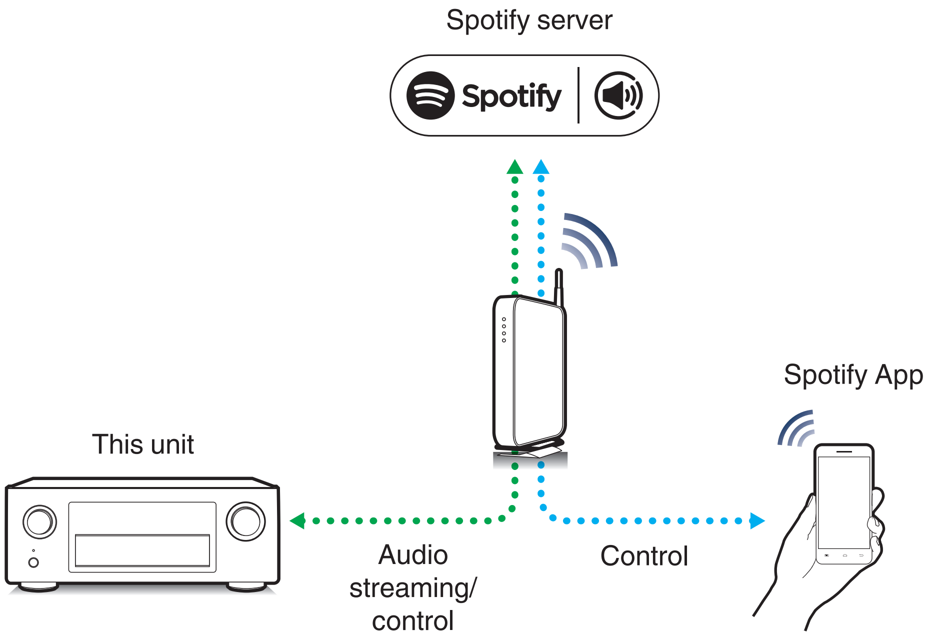
✎

- This does not need to be set if using version 12 or later of iTunes.

Spotify Connect function

Spotify is the world’s most popular streaming service. If you subscribe to Spotify Premium, you can control your new speaker with your phone or tablet. Because Spotify is built-in to your speaker, you can still take calls or use other apps - the music never stops.

For information on how to set up and use Spotify Connect please visit www.spotify.com/connect

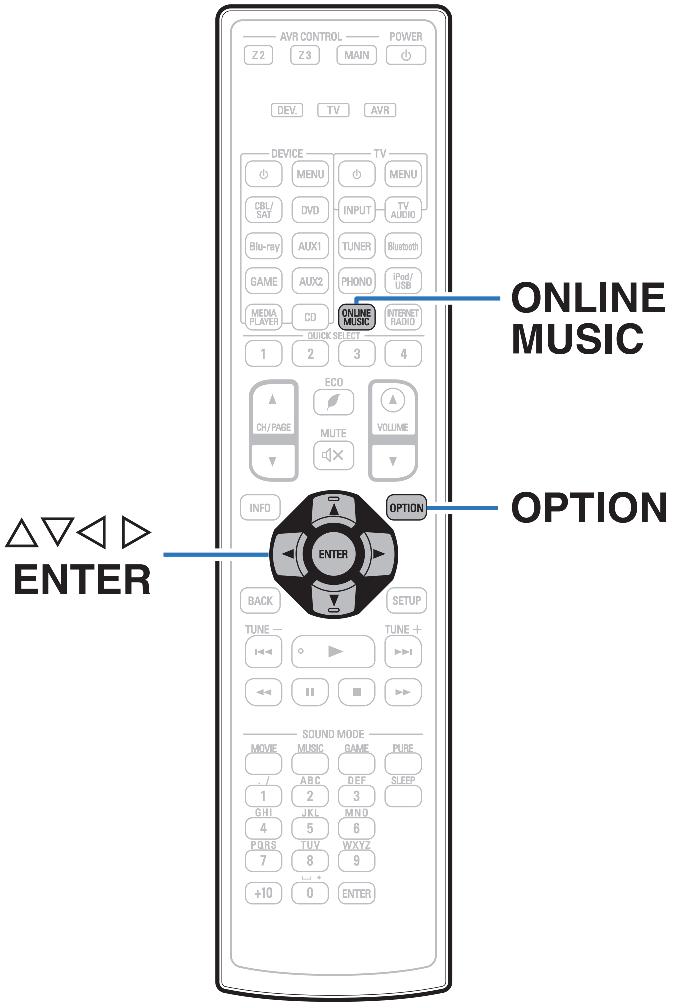


Playing Spotify music with this unit

Download the “Spotify App” onto your Android or iOS device beforehand.
To play a Spotify track in this unit, you need to register in the Spotify premium account first.

1. **Connect the Wi-Fi settings of the iOS or Android device in the same network as this unit.**
2. **Launch the Spotify App.**
3. **Play back the Spotify track.**
4. **Tap the 🔊 icon to select the unit.**
   The music will stream to this unit.

Convenience functions



- This section explains how to use convenient functions that can be used for each input source.
- These functions can only be set in the MAIN ZONE.

Performing repeat playback

❑ Supported input sources:
USB / Media Server / Bluetooth

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Repeat”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select repeat playback mode.**

Off (Default):	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
One:	A file being played is played repeatedly.
All:	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.

4 **Press ENTER.**

The display returns to the playback screen.

- This cannot be set up if the Bluetooth device does not support the repeat setting under the AVRCP profile.
- “Repeat” settings are stored for each input source.

Performing random playback

❑ Supported input sources :
USB / Media Server / Bluetooth

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Random”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select random playback mode.**

Off (Default):	Disable random playback.
On:	Randomly play back all tracks in the current playback folder.

4 **Press ENTER.**

The display returns to the playback screen.

- During random playback, each time playback of a track is completed, another track is randomly selected for playback from tracks in the folder. Therefore, it’s possible that you may hear a track played back more than once during random playback.
- This cannot be set up if the Bluetooth device does not support the random setting under the AVRCP profile.
- “Random” settings are stored for each input source.

Registering to Favorites

You can register a total of 100 favorites.

❑ Supported input sources : Internet Radio / Media Server / Pandora / SiriusXM

1 **While content is playing, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Save to Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

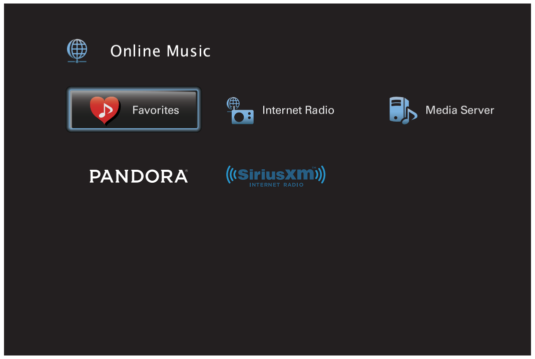
“Favorite added” is displayed, and the current content is added to favorites.

- The display returns to the playback screen when the procedure is completed.

Playing back content added to the “Save to Favorites”

1 **Press ONLINE MUSIC.**

2 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select “Favorites”, then press ENTER.**


Online Music
Favorites
Internet Radio
Media Server
PANDORA
SiriusXM
INTERNET RADIO

3 **Use △▽ to select the content you want to play, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.

Deleting content added to favorites

1 **Press ONLINE MUSIC.**

2 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select “Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use △▽ to select the content you want to delete from favorites, then press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

4 **Use △▽ to select “Remove from Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

“Favorite removed” is displayed, and the selected content is deleted from favorites.

- The screen returns to the previous screen when the delete process is complete.

Searching content with keywords (Text Search)

☐ Supported input sources : USB / Internet Radio / Media Server

1 **While the content is playing, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Text Search”, then press ENTER.**

The keyboard input screen is displayed.

3 **Enter the first character of the Internet Radio station or file you want to search for, and then press “OK”.**

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).

4 **Use △▽ to select the content you want to play, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.

✎

- “Text Search” searches for Internet Radio stations or files that start with the entered first character from the displayed list.

NOTE

- Text Search may not work for some lists.

Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)

❑ Supported input sources : USB

1 **Play back a still picture.**

- Playing back still pictures stored on USB memory devices. (☞ p. 97)

2 **Play back a music file. (☞ p. 97)**

3 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

4 **Use △▽ to select “Slideshow”, then press ENTER.**

The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.

❑ Supported input sources : Internet Radio / Media Server

1 **Play back a still picture.**

- Play back still pictures stored on Media Server. (☞ p. 117)

2 **Play back a music file of Media Server or Internet Radio station.**

- “Listening to Internet Radio” (☞ p. 113)
- “Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS” (☞ p. 117)

3 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

4 **Use △▽ to select “Slideshow”, then press ENTER.**

The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.

Setting the Slideshow Interval

Set the playback interval when playing back a slideshow of still picture (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device or media server.

☐ Supported input sources:
USB / Media Server

1 **While the list is displayed, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Slideshow Interval”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to set the display time.**

Off:	The slide show is not played back.
5s - 60s (Default: 5s)**:**	Set the time for displaying a single picture when playing back images in the slide show.

4 **Press ENTER.**

- The “Slideshow Interval” settings are reflected for all input sources.

Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)

The volume of each channel can be changed while listening to music. You can set this for each input source.

1. **Press OPTION.**
   The option menu screen is displayed.
2. **Use △▽ to select “Channel Level Adjust”, then press ENTER.**
   The “Channel Level Adjust” screen is displayed.
3. **Use △▽ to select the channel that you wish to adjust.**
4. **Use ◁ ▷ to adjust the volume.**

   –12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)
5. **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select “Exit”, then press ENTER.**

- Select “Reset” and press ENTER if you want to restore the adjustment values of the various channels to “0.0 dB” (default).
- Headphone volume can be adjusted when a headphone is connected.
- “Channel Level Adjust” settings are stored for each input source.
- You can only set this for speakers that output audio. In addition, you cannot set this when in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”. (☞ p. 204)

Adjusting the tone (Tone)

Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.

1 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Tone”, then press ENTER.**

The “Tone” screen is displayed.

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to set the tone control function to on/off.**

On:	Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).
Off (Default)**:**	Playback without tone adjustment.

4 **Select “On” in step 3 and press ▽ to select the sound range to be adjusted.**

Bass:	Adjust bass.
Treble:	Adjust treble.

5 **Use ◁ ▷ to adjust the tone, then press ENTER.**

-6 dB – +6 dB (Default : 0 dB)

- “Tone” settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 195)
- You cannot set this when no audio signal is input or in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”. (☞ p. 204)

Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)

This unit can display video from a different source on TV during audio playback. You can set this for each input source.

❑ Supported input sources: iPod/USB / CD* / Tuner / Online Music / Bluetooth / Phono

* This cannot be set when any of the HDMI, component video or video connectors are assigned.

1 **Press OPTION during audio playback.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Video Select”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select the Video Select mode.**

Off (Default)**:**	Disable Video Select mode.
On:	Enable Video Select mode.

4 **If you selected “On” in step 3, press ▽ and select “Source”.**

5 **Use ◁ ▷ to select the input source for video you want to play back, then press ENTER.**

- “Video Select” settings are stored for each input source.

Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)

❑ Supported input sources : CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / AUX1 / AUX2 / Media Player / iPod/USB / Online Music / CD* / TV Audio*

* You can set the picture mode when an HDMI, component video or video connector is assigned.

1 **Press OPTION during video playback.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use △▽ to select “Picture Mode”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Use ◁ ▷ to select picture mode.**

Off:	No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.
Standard:	The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.
Movie:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.
Vivid:	A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.
Streaming:	A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.
ISF Day:	A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.
ISF Night:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.
Custom:	Adjusts the picture quality manually.

4 **Press ENTER.**

- “Picture Mode” settings are stored for each input source.

Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)

You can play back the music being played back in MAIN ZONE simultaneously in ZONE2 and ZONE3 (separate rooms).

It is useful when you want to enjoy the same music at the same time in multiple rooms during home party or when you want to play back the same BGM in the entire house.

1 **Press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use ΔΣ to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Select “Start”, then press ENTER.**

- The input sources for ZONE2 and ZONE3 are switched to the same input source as for MAIN ZONE, and playback starts in the All Zone Stereo mode.
- When you do not want ZONE2 or ZONE3 to participate in All Zone Stereo, press ENTER to clear the check mark and then press “Start”.

■ Stopping the All Zone Stereo mode

1 **During playback in All Zone Stereo mode, press OPTION.**

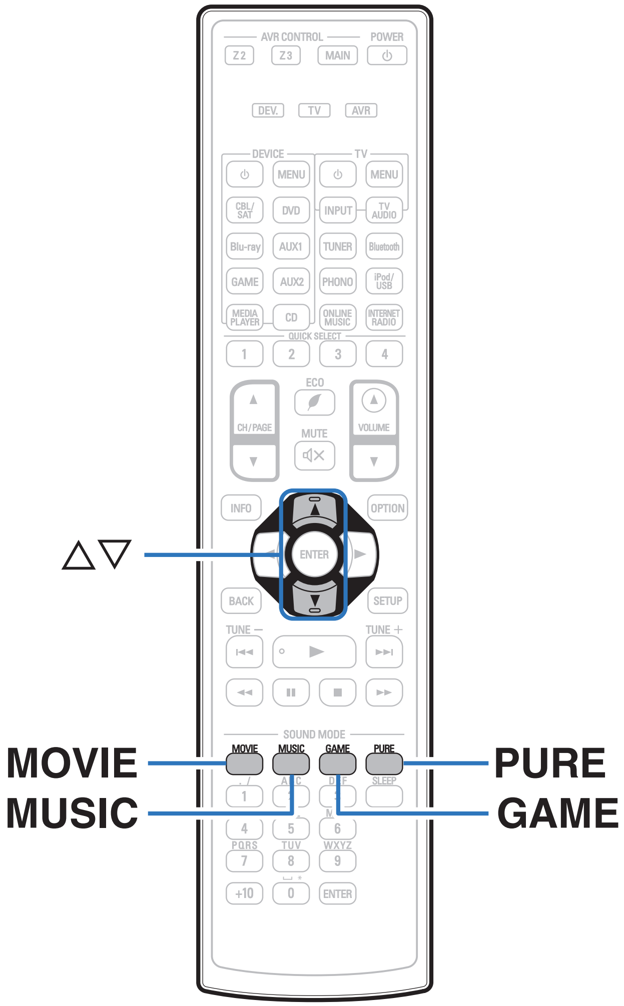
The option menu screen is displayed.

2 **Use ΔΣ to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.**

3 **Select “Stop”, then press ENTER.**

- The All Zone Stereo mode is canceled even when the power supply of the MAIN ZONE is turned off.
- In the All Zone Stereo mode, only the “Multi Ch Stereo” and “Stereo” sound modes can be selected.
- When “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, the All Zone Stereo mode is not available. (☞ p. 204)

Selecting a sound mode



This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playback modes.

Disc formats such as Blu-ray Disc and DVD, as well as being supported by digital broadcasting, and even by streaming movies and music from internet-based subscription services.

This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.

- For audio formats recorded on a disc, see the disc jacket or label.

Selecting a sound mode

1 Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a sound mode.

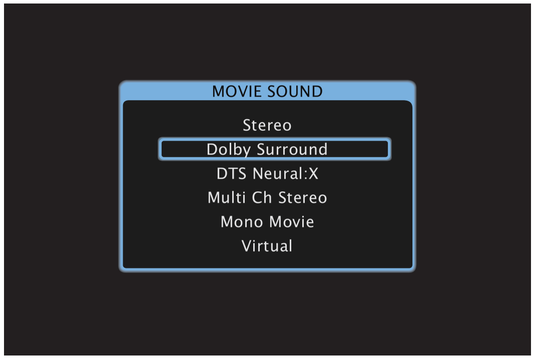
MOVIE :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.
MUSIC :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying music.
GAME :	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying games.

- The MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most appropriate sound mode for the content is automatically selected.

■ Switching the sound mode

- Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to display a list of the sound modes that can be selected. Each time you press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME, the sound mode changes.
- While the list is displayed, you can also use △▽ to select a sound mode.
- Try out various sound modes and enjoy sound mode in your favorite mode.

[Example] When MOVIE is pressed



This unit provides not only sound modes that conform to the formats recorded on discs such as Dolby and DTS, but also extended types of modes that match your speaker configuration and “original sound modes” that create atmosphere of Rock Arena and Jazz Club, etc.

Direct playback

Sound recorded in source is played as is.

1 **Press PURE to select “Direct”.**

Direct playback begins.

✎

- While DSD signals are played back, “DSD Direct” is displayed.

Pure Direct playback

This mode is for playback with higher sound quality than in Direct playback mode.

This mode turns off the main unit display and analog video circuit. Doing so suppresses noise sources that affect sound quality.

1 **Press PURE to select “Pure Direct”.**

The display goes dark, and Pure Direct playback begins.

✎

- In Direct and Pure Direct sound modes, the following items cannot be adjusted.
  - Tone (☞ p. 142)
  - Restorer (☞ p. 192)
  - MultEQ® XT32 (☞ p. 195)
  - Dynamic EQ (☞ p. 195)
  - Dynamic Volume (☞ p. 196)
  - Graphic EQ (☞ p. 198)

NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the Pure Direct mode.
- When the Pure Direct mode has been selected, the display turns off after about 5 seconds.

Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.
Perform stereo playback when the input signal is PCM. When the input signal is Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

1. **Press PURE to select “Auto”.**

   Auto surround playback begins.

■ Description of sound mode types

Dolby sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Dolby Surround	This mode uses Dolby Surround Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use ceiling speakers such as top middle speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
Dolby Digital	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby Digital.
Dolby TrueHD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby TrueHD.
Dolby Digital Plus	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby Digital Plus.
Dolby Atmos*	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with Dolby Atmos. It decodes Dolby Atmos content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.

* Can be selected when using the Surround Back, Front Wide, Front Height, Top Front, Top Middle, Top Rear, Rear Height, Front Dolby, Surround Dolby or Back Dolby speakers.

DTS sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
DTS Surround	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.
DTS ES Dscrt6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added using the discrete method is played as an independent channel. Since all channels are independent, the 360-degree spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.
DTS ES Mtrx6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added to the surround-left and surround-right channels by a matrix encoder at software recording time is decoded by this unit’s matrix decoder and played from each channel (surround left, surround right, surround back).
DTS 96/24	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24.
DTS-HD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.
DTS Express	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express.
DTS:X	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with DTS:X. It decodes DTS:X content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
DTS Neural:X	This mode uses DTS Neural:X Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use height speakers such as front height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.

* This can be selected when “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” is not set to “None”. (☞ p. 238)

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Auro-3D sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auro-3D	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create three-dimensional audio output using the Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D with a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to create highly realistic three-dimensional audio output.
Auro-2D Surround	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create Surround Sound without a Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D without a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to output Surround Sound.

PCM multi-channel sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch In	This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM/DSD sources.

Audyssey DSX® sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Audyssey DSX® (A-DSX)*	This mode creates playback for the new channels (front wide or front height) in 5.1-channel systems. By adding front wide or front height channels, the surround sound effects sound become more three dimensional and realistic.

* This can be selected when a setting other than “None” is selected for “Front Height” or “Front Wide”, and a setting other than “None” is selected for “Center” in “Speaker Config.”. (☞ p. 237)

Original sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch Stereo	This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.
Rock Arena	This mode simulates the expansive sound of a live concert in an arena.
Jazz Club	This mode simulates the experience of being in an intimate jazz club.
Mono Movie	This mode works with monaural audio sources and delivers a surround sound effect. For optimum channel balance and surround sound effects, connect the monaural source to both of the front (L/R) audio inputs.
Video Game	This mode provides an exciting, dynamic surround sound effect with your favorite action video games.
Matrix	This mode adds a spacious surround sound effect with stereo music sources.
Virtual	This mode lets you experience an expansive surround sound effect when playing back through just the front (L/R) speakers only, and when listening with stereo headphones.

Auto sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auto	In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby Digital EX, Dolby Atmos, DTS, DTS-HD, DTS:X, DTS-ES, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used. For Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

Stereo sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Stereo	This mode plays 2-channel stereo audio with no additional surround sound processing. • Sound is output from the front left and right speakers, and subwoofer if connected. • When multi-channel signals are inputted, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played back with no additional surround sound processing.

Direct sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Direct	This mode plays back audio as recorded in the source.
Pure Direct	This mode plays back an even higher quality sound than the “Direct” mode. The following circuits are stopped in order to further improve sound quality. • Display indicator circuit of the main body (display will go off.) • The analog video input/output switcher and processor is disabled.

■ Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal

- The following sound modes can be selected using the MOVIE, MUSIC and GAME buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu “Surround Parameter” to enjoy surround sound the way you like it. (☞ p. 186)

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
2-channel *1	Stereo	○	○	○
	Dolby Surround	○	○	○
	DTS Neural:X *2	○	○	○
	Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○
	Mono Movie	○		
	Rock Arena		○	
	Jazz Club		○	
	Matrix		○	
	Video Game			○
	Virtual	○	○	○

*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

*2 This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1, 7.1 or 9.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used or when the speaker configuration is front speakers only.

Input signal		Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel *3		Stereo	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital + Dolby Surround	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital A-DSX *4	○	○	○
	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○
		Dolby TrueHD + Dolby Surround*5	○	○	○
		Dolby Atmos*6	○	○	○
		Dolby TrueHD A-DSX *4	○	○	○
	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital Plus + Dolby Surround*5	○	○	○
		Dolby Atmos*6	○	○	○
		Dolby Digital Plus A-DSX *4	○	○	○
	Dolby Atmos	Dolby Atmos	○	○	○
	DTS	DTS Surround	○	○	○
		DTS ES Dscrt 6.1	○	○	○
		DTS ES Mtrx 6.1	○	○	○
		DTS 96/24	○	○	○
		DTS + Neural:X	○	○	○
		DTS Surround A-DSX *4	○	○	○

*3 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels. For details, see “Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes” (☞ p. 316).

*4 These modes add new channels to 5.1-channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing. (☞ p. 197)

*5 This can be selected when the input signal does not contain Dolby Atmos.

*6 This can be selected when the input signal contains Dolby Atmos.

Input signal		Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel *3	DTS-HD/ DTS Express	DTS-HD HI RES	○	○	○
		DTS-HD MSTR	○	○	○
		DTS-HD MSTR A-DSX *4	○	○	○
		DTS Express	○	○	○
		DTS Express A-DSX *4	○	○	○
		DTS-HD + Neural:X	○	○	○
		DTS-HD HI RES A-DSX *4	○	○	○
	DTS:X	DTS:X	○	○	○
		DTS:X MSTR	○	○	○
	PCM multi-channel	Multi Ch In	○	○	○
		Multi Ch In 7.1	○	○	○
		Multi In + Dolby Surround	○	○	○
		Multi In A-DSX *4	○	○	○
		Multi Ch In + Neural:X	○	○	○
		Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○
		Mono Movie	○		
		Rock Arena		○	
		Jazz Club		○	
		Matrix		○	
		Video Game			○
		Virtual	○	○	○

*3 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels. For details, see “Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes” (☞ p. 316).

*4 These modes add new channels to 5.1-channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing. (☞ p. 197)

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
2-channel *1/ Multi-channel *3	Auro-3D*7	○	○	○
	Auro-2D Surround*8	○	○	○

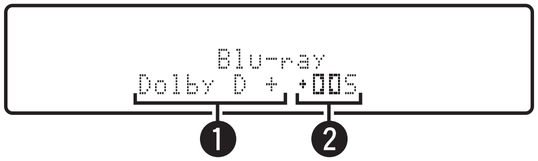
*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

*3 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels. For details, see “Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes” (☞ p. 316).

*7 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration without front height speakers is used.

*8 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

■ Views on the display



① **Shows a decoder to be used.**

- In the case of the Dolby Digital Plus decoder, “Dolby D +” is displayed.

② **Shows a decoder that creates sound output.**

- “□□S” indicates that the Dolby Surround decoder is being used.

HDMI control function

A recent addition to the HDMI standard is CEC (Consumer Electronics Control), which allows control signals from one device to communicate with another device via the HDMI cable connection.

Setting procedure

1. **Enable the HDMI control function of this unit.**

   Set “HDMI Control” to “On”. (☞ p. 205)

2. **Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.**

3. **Set the HDMI control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.**
   - Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
   - Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.

4. **Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.**

5. **Switch the input source of this unit to check that video from the player connected by HDMI is played back correctly.**

6. **When you turn the TV’s power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.**

NOTE

- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner’s manual of each device for details beforehand.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is not compatible with the HDMI control function.
- When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used with “HDMI Control” in the menu set to “On”, the HDMI ZONE2 function may not fully work.

Smart Menu function

This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Tuner and Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

1. **Enable the HDMI control function of this unit and the TV. (☞ p. 205)**

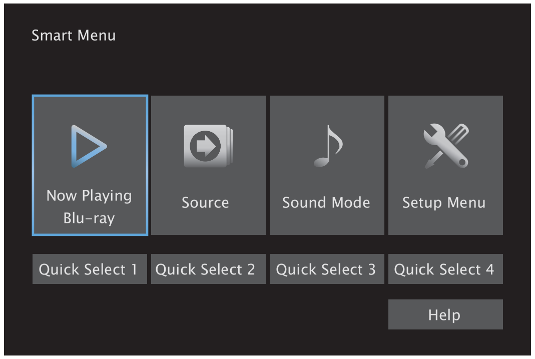
2. **Set “Smart Menu” to “On” on this unit. (☞ p. 208)**

3. **Select “AV Receiver” in a TV menu such as “Input”* or “Operate Connected HDMI Device”*.**

The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV.

- This unit can be operated with the TV remote control while the Smart Menu is displayed.

* The selection method differs depending on your TV.



■ Now Playing

Enjoy content from the input source currently selected on this unit.

■ Source

Switch the input of this unit.

If you select “Online Music”, “iPod/USB” or “Tuner”, you can continue to operate this unit using the TV remote control.

■ Sound Mode

Change the sound mode of this unit.

You can select from the following three sound modes.

Surround:	Surround sound playback according to the input signal.
Stereo:	Stereo playback.
Multi Ch Stereo:	Multi-channel stereo playback.

■ Setup Menu

Displays a setup menu for configuring the settings of this unit.

■ Quick Select

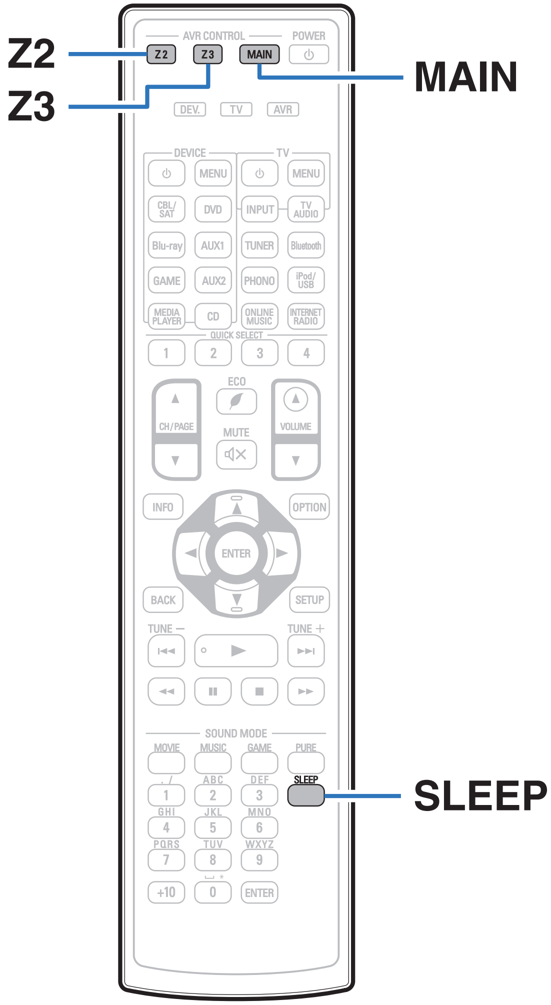
Calls up the QUICK SELECT items registered to this unit.

NOTE

- If the “HDMI Control” or “Smart Menu” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set “Smart Menu” to “Off”. (☞ p. 208)

Sleep timer function

You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep. The sleep timer function can be set for each zone.



Using the sleep timer

1 **Press MAIN, Z2 or Z3 to select the operating zone with the remote control.**

The button for the selected zone is lit.

2 **Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.**

- The S indicator lights up on the display and the sleep timer starts.
- You can set the sleep timer in the range from 10 to 120 minutes in steps of 10 minutes.

■ Checking the remaining time

Press SLEEP when the sleep timer is in operation.
The remaining time appears on the display.

■ To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to select “Off”.

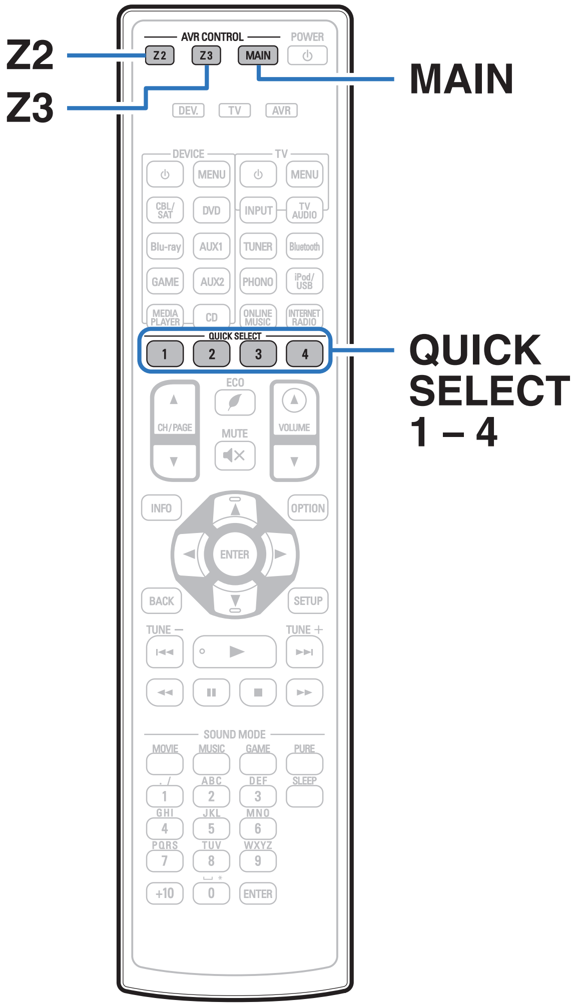
The S indicator on the display turns off.

- The sleep timer setting is canceled when the unit switches to standby mode.

NOTE

- The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

Quick select plus function



Settings such as the input source, volume level and sound mode can be registered to the QUICK SELECT 1 - 4 buttons.

You can simply press one of the registered QUICK SELECT buttons in subsequent playbacks to switch to the group of saved settings in a batch.

By saving frequently used settings at the QUICK SELECT 1 – 4 buttons, you will always be able to easily call up the same playback environment.

The Quick Select Plus function can be memorized for each zone.

- The QUICK SELECT button on main unit can only be used to operate the MAIN ZONE.

Calling up the settings

1 **Press MAIN, Z2 or Z3 to select the operating zone with the remote control.**

The button for the selected zone is lit.

2 **Press QUICK SELECT.**

The Quick Select settings registered to the button you pressed are called up.

- The default settings for the input source and volume are as shown below.

【MAIN ZONE】/【ZONE2】/【ZONE3】

Button	Input source	Volume
QUICK SELECT 1	CBL/SAT	40
QUICK SELECT 2	Blu-ray	40
QUICK SELECT 3	Media Player	40
QUICK SELECT 4	Online Music	40

Changing the settings

1 Set the items below to the settings you want to register.

The following settings from ① to ⑨ can be memorized for MAIN ZONE, and settings ① and ② can be memorized for ZONE2 and ZONE3.

① Input source (☞ p. 90)
② Volume (☞ p. 91)
③ Sound mode (☞ p. 146)
④ Audyssey (Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey LFC™) (☞ p. 194)
⑤ “Restorer” (☞ p. 192)
⑥ “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 141)
⑦ “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 143)
⑧ “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 144)
⑨ “Video Output” (☞ p. 204)

- Press and hold QUICK SELECT while a radio station is being received or a track is being played back with any of the following sources, the current radio station or track is memorized.
  - Tuner / Internet Radio / Media Server / Pandora / SiriusXM / Favorites / iPod/USB

2 Press MAIN, Z2 or Z3 to select the operating zone with the remote control.

The button for the selected zone is lit.

3 Press and hold the desired QUICK SELECT until “Quick∗ Memory”, “Z2 Quick∗ Memory” or “Z3 Quick∗ Memory” appears on the display.

The current settings will be memorized.

∗ is displayed the number for the QUICK SELECT button you pressed.

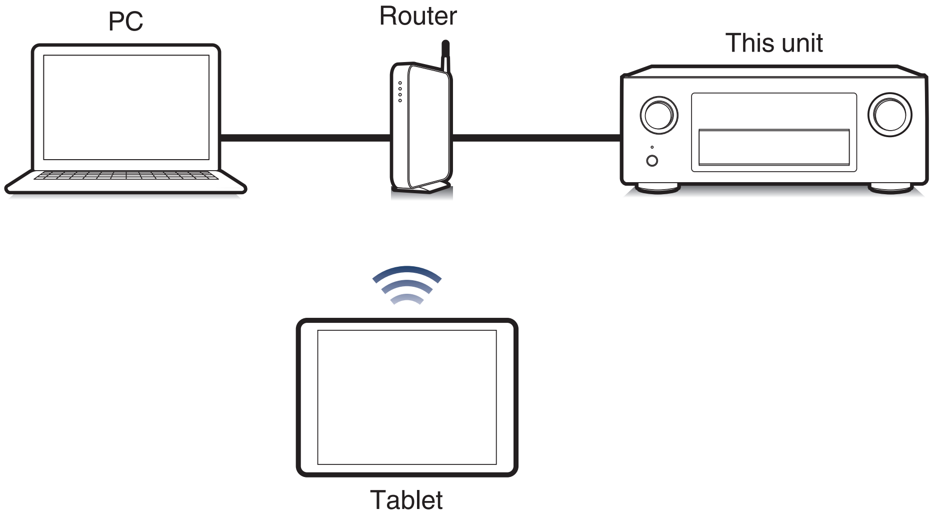
■ Changing the Quick Select Name

The MAIN ZONE Quick Select name displayed on the TV screen or display of this unit can be changed to a different name.

For the name change method, see “Quick Select Names”. (☞ p. 263)

Web control function

You can control this unit from a web control screen on a web browser.

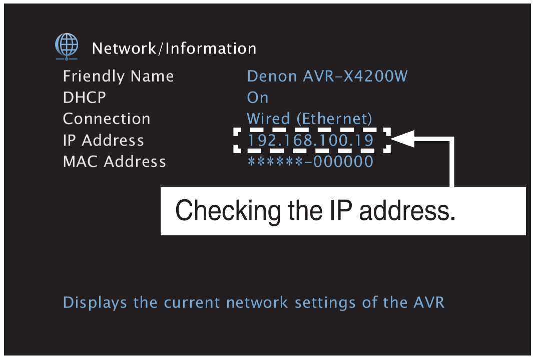


- This unit and the PC or tablet need to be connected correctly to the network in order to use the web control function. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 84))
- Depending on the settings of your security-related software, you may not be able to access this unit from your PC. If this is the case, then change the settings of the security-related software.

Controlling the unit from a web control

1 **Switch the "Network Control" setting to "Always On".** (☞ p. 255)

2 **Check the IP address of this unit with "Information".** (☞ p. 249)



Network/Information

Friendly Name	Denon AVR-X4200W
DHCP	On
Connection	Wired (Ethernet)
IP Address	192.168.100.19
MAC Address	******-000000

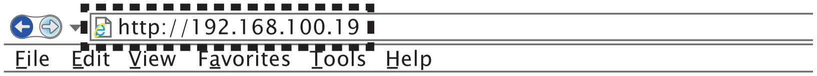
Checking the IP address.

Displays the current network settings of the AVR

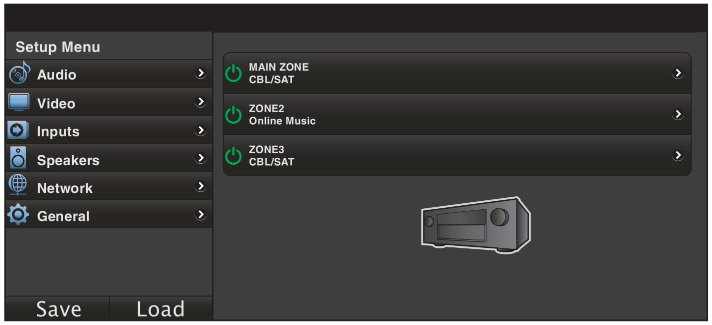
3 **Start up the web browser.**

4 Enter the IP address of this unit in browser’s address box.

For example, if the IP address of this unit is “192.168.100.19”, enter “http://192.168.100.19”.


http://192.168.100.19
File
Edit
View
Favorites
Tools
Help

5 When the top menu is displayed, click on the menu item you want to operate.


Setup Menu
Audio
Video
Inputs
Speakers
Network
General
Save
Load
MAIN ZONE
CBL/SAT
ZONE2
Online Music
ZONE3
CBL/SAT

- You can use the “Save” and “Load” functions to store or recall various function settings using web control from a PC.
  - To memorize settings, click “Save” on the Setup Menu screen.
  - To call up settings, click “Load” on the Setup Menu screen.
- We recommend using one of the following web browsers.
  Internet Explorer 10 and above
  Mozilla Firefox 24 and above
  Google Chrome 29 and above
  Safari 5.x and above

Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room)

You can operate this unit to enjoy video and audio in a room (ZONE2 and ZONE3) that is different from the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE).

You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

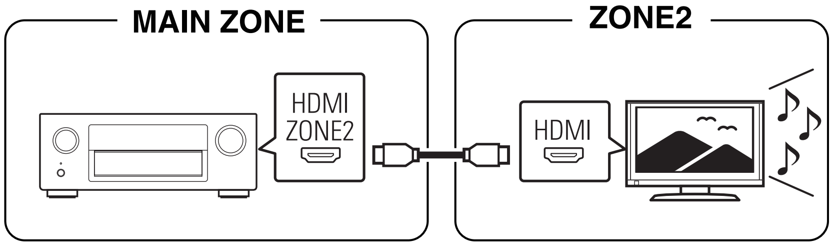
Connecting ZONE

You can use the following three methods to play back video and audio in ZONE2 and ZONE3.

- "Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector" (☞ p. 171)
- "Connection through the video output connector and speaker output connector" (☞ p. 172)
- "Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers" (☞ p. 174)

■ Connection 1 : Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector

When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 7 IN connector in ZONE2 (HDMI ZONE2 function).

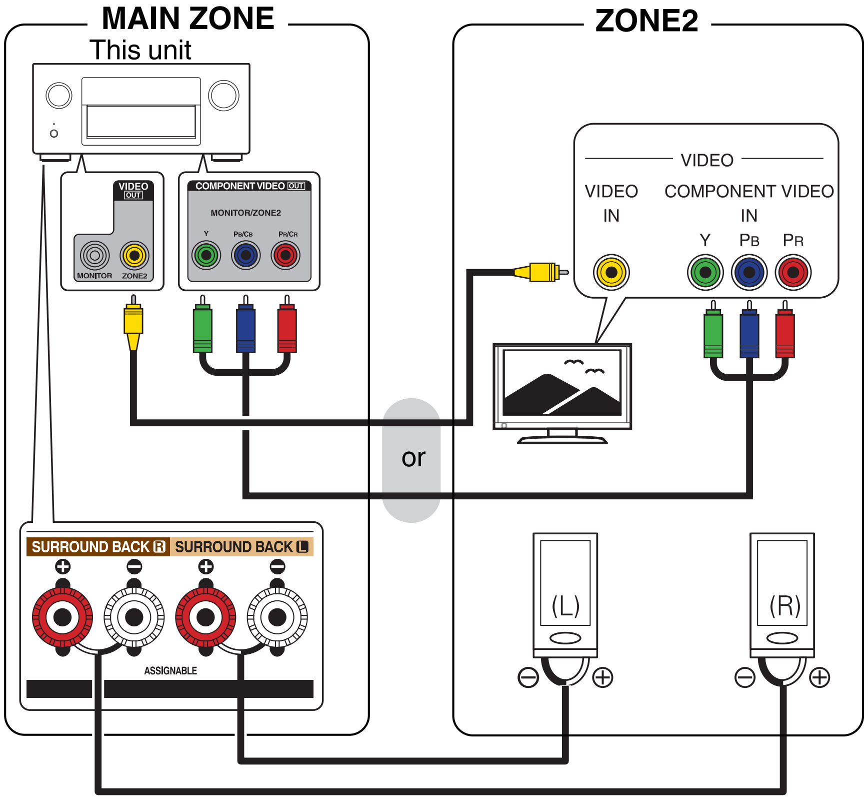


When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, and the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source, the MAIN ZONE audio may be mixed down to 2-channel audio.

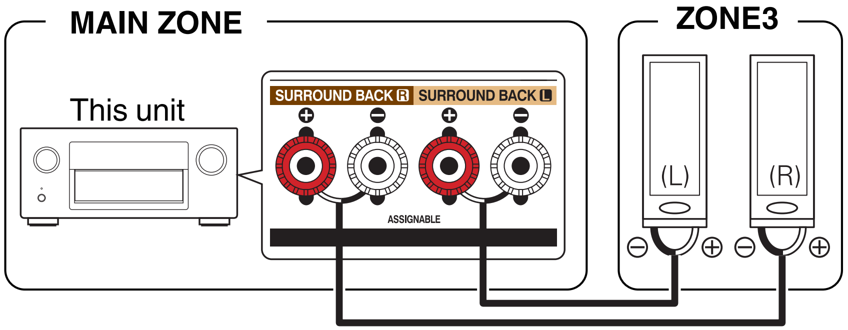
■ Connection 2 : Connection through the video output connector and speaker output connector

When “Assign Mode” in the menu is set to any of the following audio is output from speakers in ZONE2 or ZONE3. (☞ p. 232)

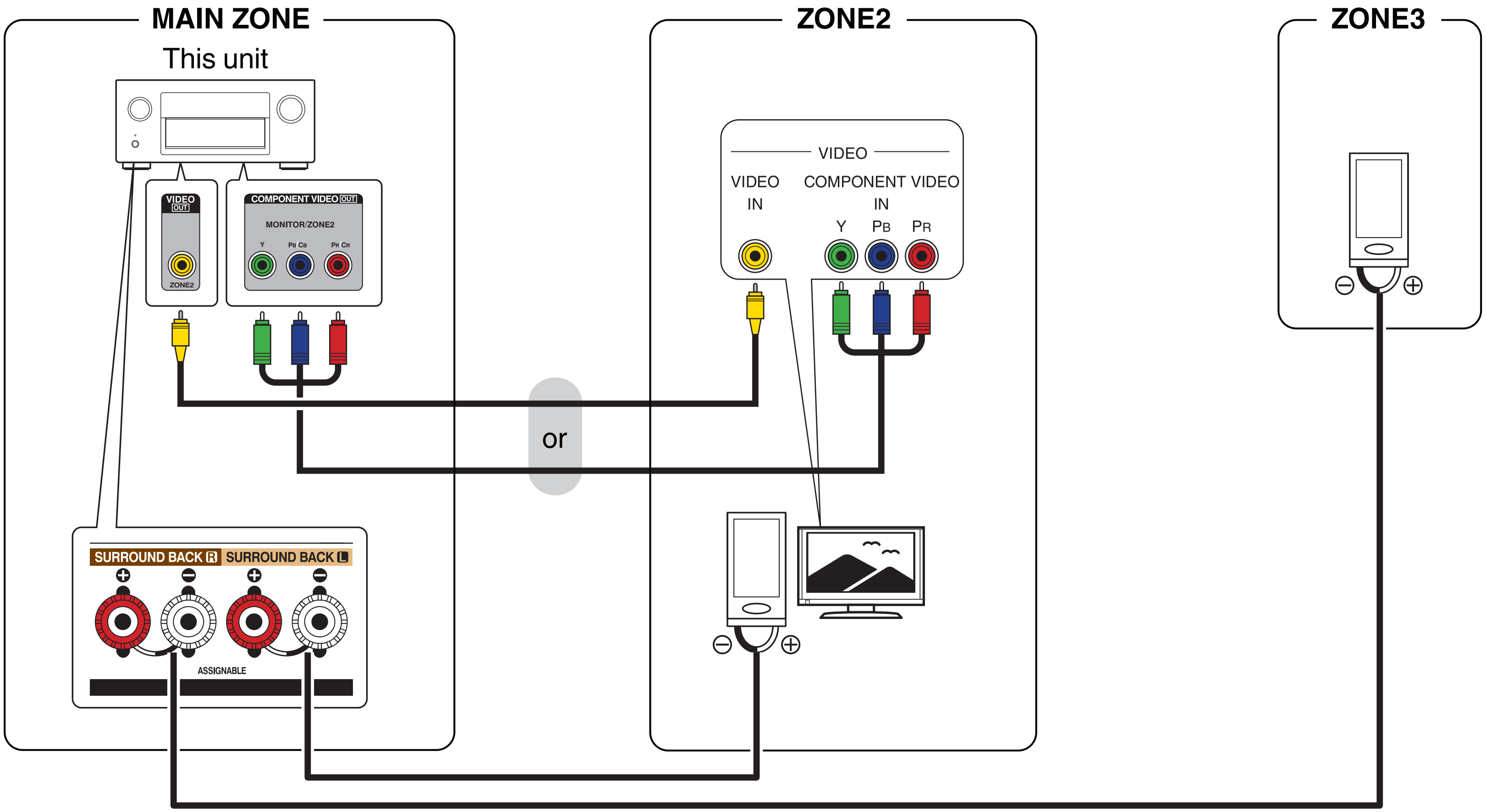
❑ Assign Mode: 5.1ch + ZONE2


MAIN ZONE
This unit
VIDEO OUT
MONITOR
ZONE2
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
MONITOR/ZONE2
Y
PB/CB
PR/CR
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
ASSIGNABLE
or
ZONE2
VIDEO
VIDEO IN
COMPONENT VIDEO IN
Y
PB
PR
(L)
(R)
⊖
⊕

❑ Assign Mode: 5.1ch + ZONE3

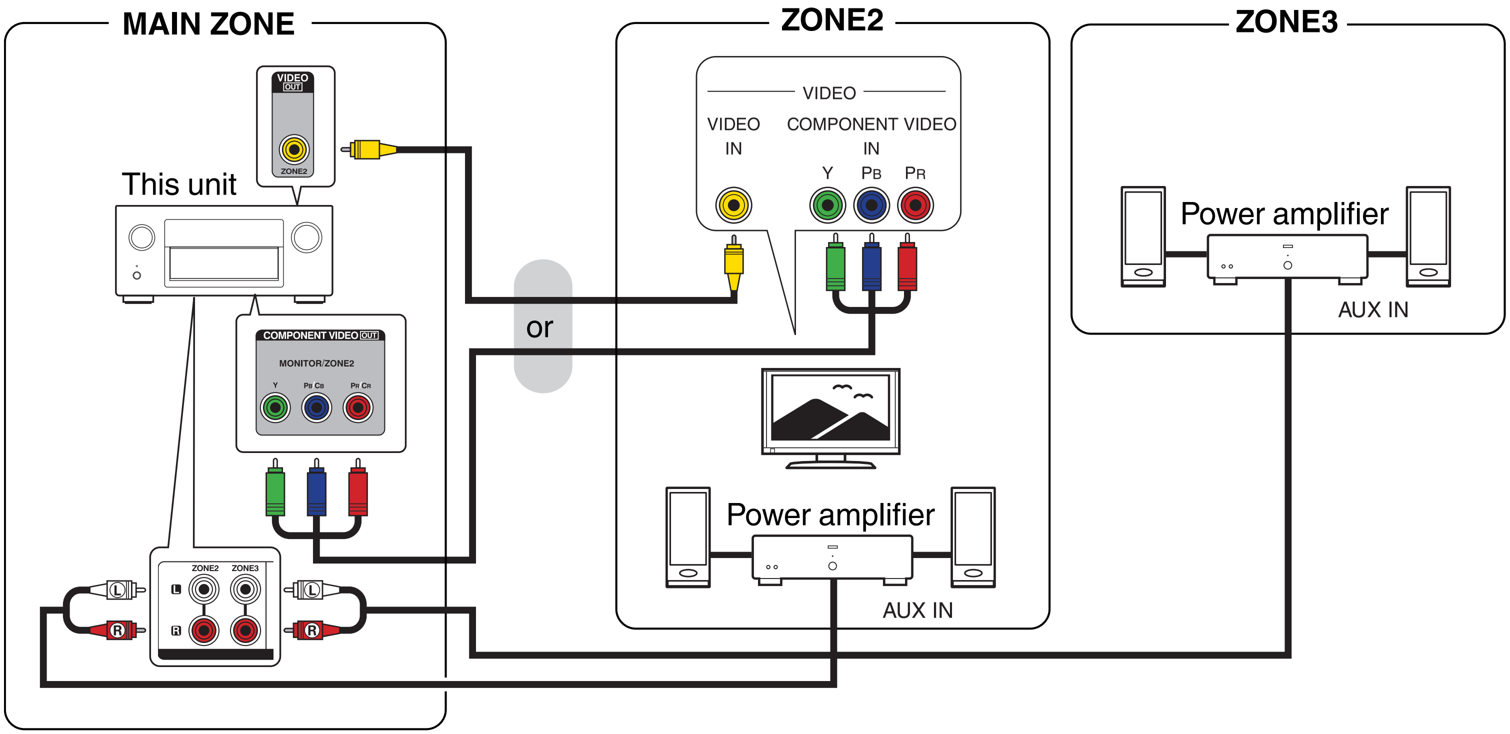

MAIN ZONE
This unit
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
ASSIGNABLE
ZONE3
(L)
(R)
⊖
⊕

❏ Assign Mode: 5.1ch + ZONE2/3-MONO


MAIN ZONE
This unit
VIDEO OUT
ZONE2
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
MONITOR/ZONE2
Y
PB CB
PR CR
SURROUND BACK R
SURROUND BACK L
ASSIGNABLE
or
ZONE2
VIDEO
VIDEO IN
COMPONENT VIDEO IN
Y
PB
PR
ZONE3

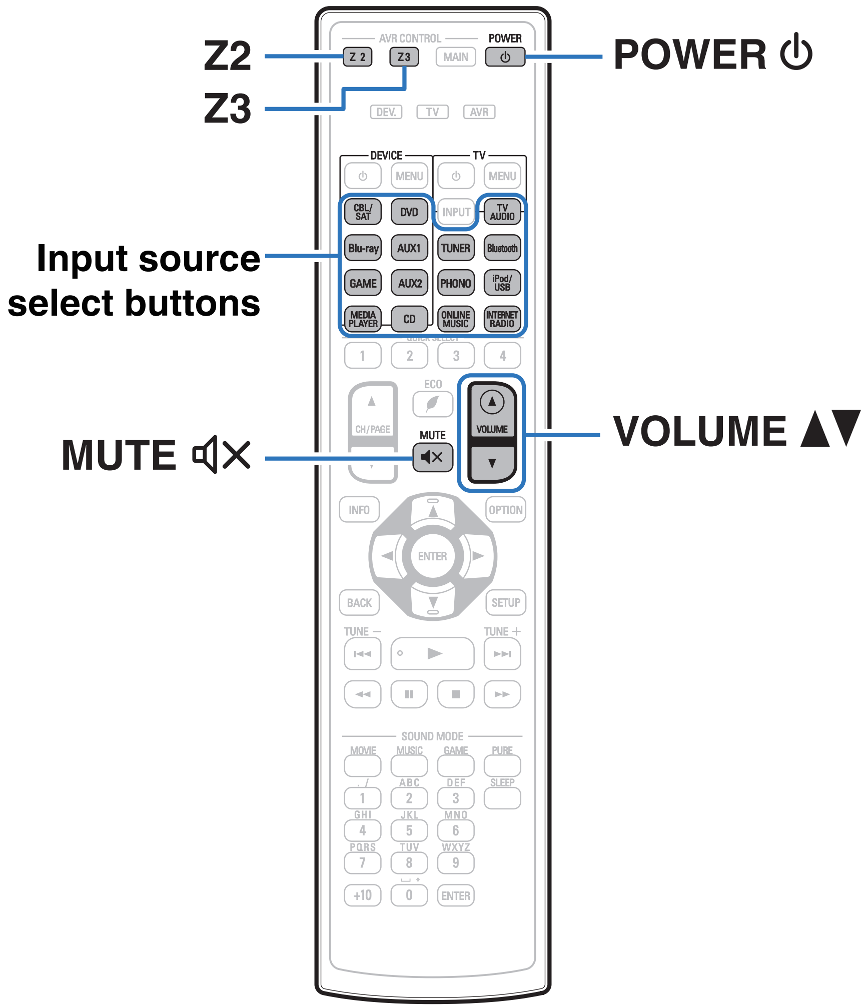
Connection 3 : Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers

The audio signals of this unit's ZONE2 and ZONE3 audio output connectors are played on the ZONE2 and ZONE3 power amplifiers.


MAIN ZONE
This unit
VIDEO OUT
ZONE2
COMPONENT VIDEO OUT
MONITOR/ZONE2
Y
PB CB
PR CR
ZONE2
ZONE3
L
R
or
ZONE2
VIDEO
VIDEO IN
COMPONENT VIDEO IN
Y
PB
PR
Power amplifier
AUX IN
ZONE3
Power amplifier
AUX IN

- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from HDMI connector or digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE2.
- If you want to play back HDMI signals other than 2-channel PCM in ZONE2, set “HDMI Audio” to “PCM”. (☞ p. 262) 2-channel PCM signals are output from a device connected to the input source selected for ZONE2 and can be played back in ZONE2.
  In this case, the MAIN ZONE audio will also be converted to 2-channel PCM signals if the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source. However, depending on the playback device, the playback signal may not be converted to PCM even if this setting is configured.
- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE3.
- When “Component Video Out” in the menu is set to “ZONE2”, the component video output connector outputs the ZONE2 video. (☞ p. 213)
- The menu screen is not output in ZONE2.

Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3



1 **Press Z2 or Z3 to switch the zone mode.**

Z2 or Z3 button lights.

2 **Press POWER ⏻ to turn on the ZONE2 or ZONE3 power.**

The MULTI ZONE indicator on the display lights.

- Power in ZONE2 or ZONE3 can be turned on or off by pressing ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF on the main unit.

3 **Press the input source select button to select the input source to be played.**

The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2 or ZONE3.

- To perform an operation with the main unit, press ZONE2 SOURCE or ZONE3 SOURCE. Each time you press ZONE2 SOURCE or ZONE3 SOURCE, the input source changes.

■ Adjusting the volume (ZONE2/ZONE3)

Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.

- At time of purchase, “Volume Limit” is set to “70 (–10 dB)”. (☞ p. 262)

✎

- Turn MASTER VOLUME after pressing ZONE2 SOURCE or ZONE3 SOURCE on the main unit to adjust the volume.

■ Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) (ZONE2/ZONE3)

Press MUTE 🔇.

The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” in the menu. (☞ p. 263)

- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE 🔇 again.

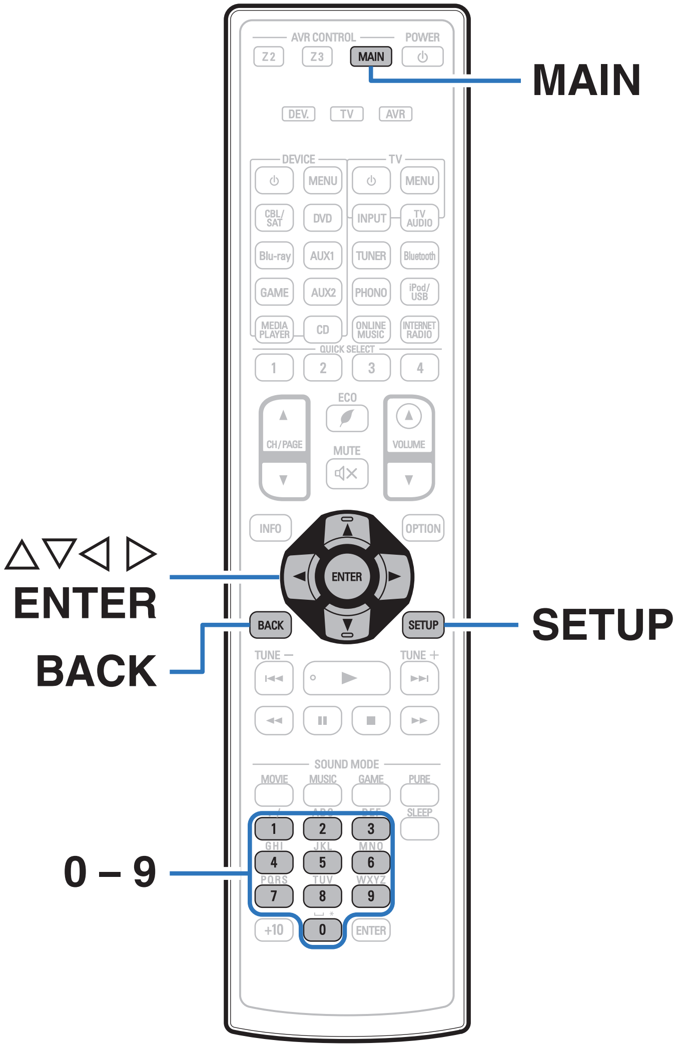
Menu map

When using menu operations, connect this unit to a TV and operate this unit while viewing the TV.
The recommended settings are configured for this unit by default. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Audio	**Dialog Level Adjust**	This setting adjusts the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.	185
	Subwoofer Level Adjust	This setting adjusts the volume level for the subwoofer.	185
	Surround Parameter	Adjusts surround sound parameters.	186
	Restorer	Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio content such as MP3 files to enable richer audio playback.	192
	Audio Delay	Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.	193
	Volume	Sets the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.	193
	Audyssey	Makes Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey LFC™ and Audyssey DSX® settings.	194
	Graphic EQ	Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.	198
Video	**Picture Adjust**	Adjusts picture quality.	201
	HDMI Setup	Makes settings for HDMI video/audio output.	203
	Output Settings	Makes settings for video output.	209
	Component Video Out	Sets whether to use the component video output connector for MAIN ZONE or ZONE2.	213
	On Screen Display	Configures the on-screen display settings.	213
	TV Format	Sets the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.	214

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
Inputs	**Input Assign**	Changes input connector assignment.	215
	Source Rename	Changes the display name for input source.	217
	Hide Sources	Removes from the display input sources that are not used.	218
	Source Level	Adjusts the playback level of the audio input.	218
	Input Select	Sets the audio input mode and decode mode.	219
Speakers	**Audyssey® Setup**	The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.	220
	Manual Setup	Sets up the speakers manually or changes the Audyssey® Setup settings.	231
Network	**Information**	Displays network information.	249
	Connection	Selects whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.	249
	Settings	Used for manually setting the IP address or when using a proxy server.	253
	Network Control	Enables network communication in standby power mode.	255
	Friendly Name	The “Friendly Name” is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.	255
	Diagnostics	Used to check the network connection.	256
	Maintenance Mode	Used when receiving maintenance from a Denon service engineer or custom installer. This mode is not designed for use by the end user, and should only be used by a trained service technician or custom installation professional.	257

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
General	**Language**	Changes the language of the display on the TV screen.	258
	ECO	Configures the ECO Mode and Auto Standby energy-saving functions.	258
	ZONE2 Setup/ ZONE3 Setup	Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.	261
	Zone Rename	Changes the display title of each zone to one you prefer.	263
	Quick Select Names	Changes the Quick Select Name display title to one you prefer.	263
	Trigger Out 1/ Trigger Out 2	Select the conditions for activating trigger out function.	264
	Front Display	Makes settings related to the display on this unit.	264
	Firmware	Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display.	266
	Information	Shows information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.	268
	Usage Data	Selects whether or not to send anonymous usage data to Denon.	269
	Setup Lock	Protects settings from inadvertent changes.	270
Setup Assistant	**Begin Setup...**	Performs basic installation/connections/settings from the beginning according to the guidance indicated on the TV screen.	Page 9 of the separate manual "Quick Start Guide"
	Language Select	Sets individual setting items according to the guidance displayed on the TV screen.	
	Speaker Setup		
	Speaker Calibration		
	Network Setup		
	TV Audio Connection		
	Input Setup		



Menu operations

1 **Press MAIN on the remote control unit to set the operating zone to the MAIN ZONE.**

The MAIN button lights.

2 **Press SETUP.**

The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

3 **Use △▽ ▷ to select the menu to be set or operated, then press ENTER.**

4 **Use ◁ ▷ to change to desired setting.**

5 **Press ENTER to enter the setting.**

- To return to the previous item, press BACK.
- Exiting the menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

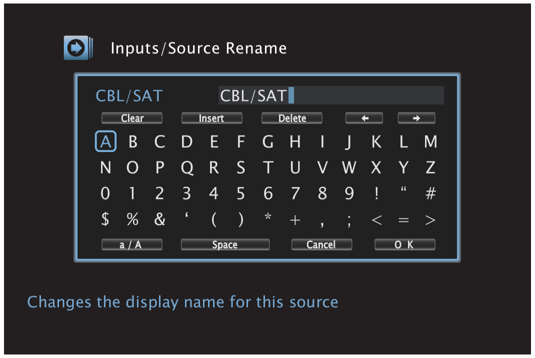
Inputting characters

- On this unit, you can change the name displayed on the following screens to the names that you prefer.
  - Preset Name (☞ p. 110)
  - Text Search (☞ p. 138)
  - Source Rename (☞ p. 217)
  - Friendly Name (☞ p. 255)
  - Zone Rename (☞ p. 263)
  - Quick Select Names (☞ p. 263)
  - Character input for the network functions
- The following two methods can be used for inputting characters.
  - Using the keyboard screen (☞ p. 183)
  - Using the number buttons (☞ p. 184)

Using the keyboard screen

1 **Display the screen for inputting characters.**

[Example] "Source Rename" screen



Inputs/Source Rename
CBL/SAT
CBL/SAT
Clear
Insert
Delete
←
→
A B C D E F G H I J K L M
N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 ! " #
$ % & ' ( ) * + , ; < = >
a / A
Space
Cancel
O K

Changes the display name for this source

2 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select ← or →.**

3 **Press ENTER to move the cursor to the character that you wish to change.**

- Each time ENTER is pressed, the cursor moves by one character.

4 **Select a character to be input with △▽◁ ▷ then press ENTER.**

5 **Repeat steps 2 - 4 to change the name.**

6 **Use △▽◁ ▷ to select "OK", then press ENTER.**

Using the number buttons

1 **When the keyboard screen is displayed, press 0 – 9.**

The 10 key input screen is displayed.

2 **Place the cursor at the character to be changed with ◁ ▷ and press the number button (0 – 9) until the desired character is displayed.**

- The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

. / 1	1 . @ - _ / : ˜	MNO 6	M N O m n o 6
ABC 2	A B C a b c 2	PQRS 7	P Q R S p q r s 7
DEF 3	D E F d e f 3	TUV 8	T U V t u v 8
GHI 4	G H I g h i 4	WXYZ 9	W X Y Z w x y z 9
JKL 5	J K L j k l 5	␣ * 0	0 (Space) ! “ # $ % & ‘ ( ) * + , ; < = > ? [\ ] ^ ` { | }

3 **Repeat step 2 to change the name then press ENTER to register it.**

Audio

Make audio-related settings.

Dialog Level Adjust

This setting adjusts the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.

Dialog Level Adjust

Set whether to adjust the dialog level or not.

On:	Enables the adjustment of the dialog level.
Off (Default)**:**	Disables the adjustment of the dialog level.

Level

Adjusts the volume output from the center channel.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

Subwoofer Level Adjust

This setting adjusts the volume level for the subwoofer.

Subwoofer Level Adjust

Set whether to adjust the subwoofer level.

On:	Enables the adjustment of the subwoofer level.
Off (Default)**:**	Disables the adjustment of the subwoofer level.

Subwoofer 1 Level /Subwoofer 2 Level

Adjusts the volume level for the Subwoofer 1 and Subwoofer 2.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

Surround Parameter

You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.
The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see “Sound modes and surround parameters” (☞ p. 312).

- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- “Surround Parameter” settings are stored for each sound mode.

■ Cinema EQ

Gently softens the upper treble range of movie soundtracks to reduce possible harshness and improve clarity.

On:	“Cinema EQ” is used.
Off (Default)**:**	“Cinema EQ” is not used.

■ Loudness Management

This sets whether to output as specified in “Dynamic Compression” or output directly without compressing the dynamic range of audio recorded in the disc.

On (Default)**:**	Outputs are given based on enabling the settings made in “Dynamic Compression” and Dialog normalization function.
Off:	“Dynamic Compression” settings and Dialogue Normalization are disabled, and the signals on the disc are output as is.

- “Loudness Management” can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD and Dolby Atmos signal is input.

Dynamic Compression

Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds).

Auto:	Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source.
Low / Medium / High:	These set the compression level.
Off:	Dynamic range compression is always off.

- "Dynamic Compression" can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is input.
- The default setting is "Off". When the input signal is the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos source, the default setting is "Auto".

Dialog Control

Adjust the volume of dialog in movies, vocals in music, etc. so these can be heard more easily.

0 – 6 (Default : 0)

- This can be set when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

Low Frequency Effects

Adjust the low frequency effects level (LFE).

-10 dB – 0 dB (Default : 0 dB)

- For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below.
  - Dolby Digital sources : 0 dB
  - DTS movie sources : 0 dB
  - DTS music sources: -10 dB

■ Center Spread

Center spread expands the center channel signal to left and right front speakers to create a wider frontal audio image for the listener. It is optimized and designed primary for playback of stereo music content.

On:	Use “Center Spread”.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use “Center Spread”.

- You can set this when sound mode is “Dolby Surround”.

■ DTS Neural:X

DTS Neural:X Expands the non-object based audio signals and optimizes them for your speaker configuration.

On (Default)**:**	Use “DTS Neural:X”.
Off:	Do not use “DTS Neural:X”.

- You can set this when sound mode is “DTS:X” or “DTS:X MSTR”.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

■ Auro-Matic 3D Preset

Selects the Auro-Matic 3D Preset for fine tuning the Auro-3D experience to specific audio material.

Small:	Small is ideal for pop and chamber music or movies with a lot of dialog. (e.g. comedy)
Medium (Default)**:**	Medium is best used on jazz music or typical movies and TV shows.
Large:	Large is ideal for recordings that were recorded in large spaces. (e.g. orchestral recordings or action movies with big explosions.)
Speech:	Speech is ideal for recordings which are mostly dialog (e.g. news broadcast), and that have virtually no inherent spatial information.

- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

■ Auro-Matic 3D Strength

Changes the level of the up-mixed channels in relation to the original input signal.
The value ranges from 1 (no up-mixing) to 16 (Maximum level, providing maximum effect).

1 - 16 (Default:10)

- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

Delay Time

Adjust the audio delay time against video to extend the sound field image.

0 ms – 300 ms (Default : 30 ms)

- You can set this when the sound mode is “Matrix”.

Effect Level

Adjust the sound effect level of the current sound mode.

1 – 15 (Default : 10)

- Set to a lower level if the positioning and sense of phase of the surround signals seems unnatural.

Room Size

Determine size of acoustic environment.

Small:	Simulate acoustics of a small room.
Medium small:	Simulate acoustics of a medium-small room.
Medium (Default):	Simulate acoustics of a medium room.
Medium large:	Simulate acoustics of a medium-large room.
Large:	Simulate acoustics of a large room.

- “Room Size” does not indicate the size of the room in which sources are played.

Speaker Select

Makes settings for the speakers outputting sound.

Floor (Default)**:**	Plays back without height speakers.
Floor & Height:	Plays back with height speakers.
Front:	Plays back only with speakers in front of the surround speaker.

✎

- This can be set when the sound mode is the original sound mode.

Subwoofer

Turn subwoofer output on and off.

On (Default)**:**	The subwoofer is used.
Off:	The subwoofer is not used.

✎

- You can set this when the sound mode is “Direct” or “Stereo” and in the menu “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE+Main”. (☞ p. 245)

Set Defaults

The “Surround Parameter” settings are returned to the default settings.

Restorer

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The “Restorer” function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also restores the original bass characteristics for a rich and expanded tonal range.

■ Mode

High:	Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs (64 kbps and under).
Medium:	Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources (96 kbps and under).
Low:	Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs (96 kbps and over).
Off:	Do no use “Restorer”.

✎

- This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.
- This item default setting for “Online Music”, “iPod/USB” and “Bluetooth” is “Low”. All others are set to “Off”.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- “Restorer” settings are stored for each input source.

Audio Delay

Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.

0 ms – 200 ms (Default : 0 ms)

- Audio Delay for game mode can be set when “Video Mode” is set to “Auto” or “Game”. (☞ p. 209)
- “Audio Delay” settings are stored for each input source.

Volume

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

■ Scale

Set how volume is displayed.

0 - 98 (Default)**:**	Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98.
–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB:	Display ---dB (Min), in the range –79.5 dB to 18.0 dB.

- “Scale” settings are reflected in all the zones.

■ Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

60 (–20 dB) / 70 (–10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)

Off (Default)

■ Power On Level

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

Last (Default)**:**	Use the memorized setting from the last session.
Mute:	Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on.
1 – 98 (–79 dB – 18 dB) :	The volume is adjusted to the set level.

■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

Full (Default):	The sound is muted entirely.
–40 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.
–20 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

Audyssey®

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™. These can be selected after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.

For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see "Explanation of terms" (☞ p. 320).

- "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ", "Reference Level Offset", "Dynamic Volume", "Audyssey LFC™", "Containment Amount" and "Audyssey DSX®" settings are stored for each input source.
- When the sound mode is in the "Direct" or "Pure Direct" mode, "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ" and "Dynamic Volume" settings cannot be configured.

■ MultEQ® XT32

MultEQ® XT32 compensates for both time and frequency characteristics of the listening area based on Audyssey® Setup measurement results. Selection is done from three types of compensation curves. We recommend the “Reference” setting.

Reference (Default)**:**	Selects the default calibrated setting with a slight roll off at high frequencies, which is optimized for movies.
L/R Bypass:	Selects the reference setting, but bypasses MultEQ® XT32 on the front left and right speakers.
Flat:	Selects the calibrated setting which is optimized for small rooms where your listening position is closer to the speakers.
Off :	Do not use “MultEQ® XT32”.

- When using headphones, “MultEQ® XT32” is automatically set to “Off”.

■ Dynamic EQ

Solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

On (Default)**:**	Use Dynamic EQ.
Off:	Do not use Dynamic EQ.

- When the menu “Dynamic EQ” setting is “On”, it is not possible to do “Tone” adjustment. (☞ p. 142)

Reference Level Offset

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard. Recommended setting levels for content are shown below.

0 dB (Film Reference) (Default)**:**	Optimized for content such as movies.
5 dB :	Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.
10 dB :	Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference.
15 dB :	Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.

- Setting is enabled when “Dynamic EQ” is “On”. (☞ p. 195)

Dynamic Volume

Solves the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user’s preferred volume setting.

Heavy:	Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds.
Medium:	Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound.
Light:	Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use Dynamic Volume.

- If “Dynamic Volume” is set to “Yes” in “Audyssey® Setup”, the setting is automatically changed to “Medium”. (☞ p. 220)

Audyssey LFC™

Adjusts the low frequency band to prevent bass and vibration from being conveyed to neighboring rooms.

On:	Use “Audyssey LFC™”.
Off (Default):	Do not use “Audyssey LFC™”.

Containment Amount

Adjusts the amount of low frequency containment. Use higher settings if you have close neighbors.

1 – 7 (Default : 4)

- This can be set when “Audyssey LFC™” in the menu is set to “On”.

Audyssey DSX®

Provides more immersive surround sound by adding the new channels.

Wide:	Turn on Audyssey DSX® processing for front wide channel expansion.
Height:	Turn on Audyssey DSX® processing for front height channel expansion.
Wides/Heights:	Turns on Audyssey DSX® processing for front wide and front height channel expansion.
Off (Default):	Do not set “Audyssey DSX®”.

- “Audyssey DSX®” can be set when you are using front height speakers or front wide speakers.
- “Audyssey DSX®” is only valid when using a center speaker.
- When 2-channel signals are being played back, “Audyssey DSX®” cannot be used.
- “Audyssey DSX®” cannot be configured if the HD Audio source being played includes Front height and Front wide channels. In this case, the respective channels are played back using the input signals.

Stage Width

Adjust sound stage width when using front wide speakers.

–10 – +10 (Default : 0)

Stage Height

Adjust sound stage height when using front height speakers.

–10 – +10 (Default : 0)

Graphic EQ

Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.

- Speakers for which “Graphic EQ” can be set differ according to the sound mode.
- This can be set when the “MultEQ® XT32” setting is “Off”. (☞ p. 195)
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- If you are using headphones, you can set the equalizer for headphones. (☞ p. 198)

Graphic EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer or not.

On:	Use the graphic equalizer.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use the graphic equalizer.

When using headphones

❑ Headphone EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer for headphones or not.

On:	Use the graphic equalizer for headphones.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use the graphic equalizer for headphones.

Speaker Selection

Select whether to adjust tones for individual speakers or for all speakers.

All:	Adjust all speaker tones together.
Left/Right (Default)**:**	Adjust the left and right speaker tones together.
Each:	Adjust the tone for each speaker.

Adjust EQ

Adjust tonal balance for each frequency band.

1. Select the speaker.
2. Select the adjustment frequency band.
   63 Hz / 125 Hz / 250 Hz / 500 Hz / 1 kHz / 2 kHz / 4 kHz / 8 kHz / 16 kHz
3. Adjust the level.
   –20.0 dB – +6.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

- Front Dolby, Surround Dolby and Back Dolby speakers can only be set when 63 Hz/125 Hz/250 Hz/500 Hz/1 kHz.

■ Curve Copy

Copy the Flat correction curve created in the Audyssey® Setup.

- “Curve Copy” is displayed after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.
- “Curve Copy” cannot be used when using headphones.

■ Set Defaults

The “Graphic EQ” settings are returned to the default settings.

Video

Make video-related settings.

Picture Adjust

Picture quality can be adjusted.

- Can be set when the “Video Conversion” setting is “On”. (☞ p. 210)
- Can be set when “HDMI”, “COMP” or “VIDEO” is assigned for each input source. (☞ p. 216)
- “Contrast”, “Brightness”, “Saturation”, “Noise Reduction” and “Enhancer” can be set when “Picture Mode” is set to “Custom”. (☞ p. 144)
- “Picture Adjust” settings are stored for each input source.
- “Picture Adjust” cannot be set when 4K signals are input.

■ Picture Mode

Select the desired picture mode according to the video content and your viewing environment.

Standard:	The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.
Movie:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.
Vivid:	A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.
Streaming:	A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.
ISF Day:	A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.
ISF Night:	A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.
Custom:	Adjusts the picture quality manually.
Off:	No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.

- The two special adjustment modes, ISF Day and ISF Night, should be used by a certified technician to adjust the color calibration to match the installation conditions.
  We recommend that the settings and adjustments be carried out by an ISF-certified technician.
- These settings can also be configured using “Picture Mode” in the option menu. (☞ p. 144)
- The default settings are as follows.
  - For “Online Music” and “iPod/USB” input sources: Streaming
  - For input sources other than “Online Music” and “iPod/USB”: Off

■ Contrast

Adjust picture contrast.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

■ Brightness

Adjust picture brightness.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

■ Saturation

Adjust picture chroma level (color saturation).

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

Noise Reduction

Reduce overall video noise.

Low / Medium / High / Off (Default : Off)

Enhancer

Emphasize picture sharpness.

0 – +12 (Default : 0)

HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

NOTE

- When “HDMI Control” and “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “On”, it consumes more standby power. (“HDMI Control” (☞ p. 205), “HDMI Pass Through” (☞ p. 206)) If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

Auto Lip Sync

Make automatic compensation for timing shift in audio and video output.

On (Default)**:**	Correct automatically.
Off:	Do not correct automatically.

■ HDMI Audio Out

Select HDMI audio output device.

AVR (Default)**:**	Play back through speakers connected to the unit.
TV:	Play back through TV connected to the unit.

- When the HDMI control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting. (☞ p. 161)
- When the power of this unit is on and “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, audio is output as 2-channel from the HDMI OUT connector.

■ Video Output

Select the HDMI monitor connector to be used.

Auto(Dual) (Default)**:**	The presence of a TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 or HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is detected automatically, and that TV connection is used.
Monitor 1:	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector is always used.
Monitor 2:	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is always used.

- If both the HDMI MONITOR 1 and HDMI MONITOR 2 connectors are connected and “Resolution” is set to “Auto”, the signals are output with a resolution that is compatible with both TVs. (☞ p. 211)
  When the “Resolution” setting in the menu is not set to “Auto”, set the resolution in “Video” - “HDMI Monitor 1” and “HDMI Monitor 2” to one that is compatible with both TVs. (☞ p. 268)
- You can check which resolutions are compatible with your TV in “HDMI Monitor 1” and “HDMI Monitor 2”. (☞ p. 268)

■ HDMI Control

You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.

On:	Use HDMI control function.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use HDMI control function.

- If using the HDMI control function, connect a TV compatible with HDMI control to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.
- Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings.
- Refer to “HDMI control function” for more information about the HDMI control function. (☞ p. 161)

NOTE

- If the “HDMI Control” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

■ ARC

On the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector, set whether to receive sound from the TV via HDMI.

On:	Use ARC function.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use ARC function.

- You can adjust the volume of this unit using the TV remote control.
- If using this function, use a TV compatible with ARC (Audio Return Channel) and enable the HDMI control function of the TV.
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “On”, the “ARC” settings automatically switch “On”. (☞ p. 205)

NOTE

- If the “ARC” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

HDMI Pass Through

Selects how this unit will transmit HDMI signals to the HDMI output in standby power mode.

On (Default)**:**	Transmits the selected HDMI input through the AV receiver's HDMI output when this unit is in standby power mode.
Off:	No HDMI signals are transmitted through this unit's HDMI output in standby power mode.

Pass Through Source

Sets the HDMI connector that inputs HDMI signals when in standby.

Last:	The most recently used input source will go into standby mode.
CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / AUX1 / AUX2 / Media Player / CD* (Default : CBL/SAT)**:**	Pass through the selected input source.

*“Pass Through Source” can be set when any of the HDMI connectors is assigned to “CD” for the input source in the “Input Assign” setting. (☞ p. 215)

- “Pass Through Source” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On” or “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “On”. (“HDMI Control” (☞ p. 205), “HDMI Pass Through” (☞ p. 206))

■ TV Audio Switching

Sets automatic switching to the “TV Audio” input when a TV connected via HDMI sends an appropriate CEC control command to the AVR.

On (Default)**:**	Select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.
Off:	Do not select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.

- “TV Audio Switching” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 205)

■ Power Off Control

Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.

All (Default)**:**	If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.
Video:	With an input source being selected that is assigned either “HDMI”, “COMP” or “VIDEO”, when you turn the power of the TV off, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. (☞ p. 216)
Off:	This unit does not link with power to a TV.

- “Power Off Control” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 205)

■ Power Saving

If “TV Speaker” is set as the audio output setting of your TV, this unit is automatically set to standby mode to reduce power consumption.

This function is activated in the following cases.

- When “TV Audio” is selected as the input source of this unit
- When playing content from a device connected by HDMI

On:	Use Power Saving function.
Off (Default)**:**	Do not use Power Saving function.

- “Power Saving” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 205)

■ Smart Menu

This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Tuner and Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

On:	Use Smart Menu function.
Off:	Do not use Smart Menu function.

- “Smart Menu” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 205)

NOTE

- If the “Smart Menu” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set “Smart Menu” to “Off”.

Output Settings

Makes settings for video output.

✎

- Can be set when “HDMI”, “COMP” or “VIDEO” is assigned for each input source. (☞ p. 216)
- “Resolution”, “Progressive Mode” and “Aspect Ratio” can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “Off”. (“Resolution” (☞ p. 211), “Progressive Mode” (☞ p. 212), “Aspect Ratio” (☞ p. 212))
- “Output Settings” cannot be set when 4K signals are input.
- “Video Conversion”, “i/p Scaler”, “Resolution”, “Progressive Mode” and “Aspect Ratio” settings are stored for each input source. (“Video Conversion” (☞ p. 210), “i/p Scaler” (☞ p. 210), “Resolution” (☞ p. 211), “Progressive Mode” (☞ p. 212), “Aspect Ratio” (☞ p. 212))

■ Video Mode

Configure the video processing method to match the type of video content.

Auto (Default)**:**	Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information.
Game:	Always process video for game content. Minimize the video delay when the video is delayed compared to the button operations on the controller of the game console.
Movie:	Perform image processing that is suitable for contents other than games.

✎

- If “Video Mode” is set to “Auto”, the mode is switched according to the input contents.

■ Video Conversion

The input video signal is converted automatically in conjunction with the connected TV. (☞ p. 304)

On (Default)**:**	The input video signal is converted.
Off:	The input video signal is not converted.

■ i/p Scaler

Set the video input signal to be subjected to i/p scaler processing. i/p Scaler will convert the resolution of the input video signal to the value set in “Resolution”. (☞ p. 211)

❑ When the input source is set other than to “iPod/USB” and “Online Music”

Analog (Default)**:**	Use i/p (interlace-to-progressive) scaler function for analog video signals.
Analog & HDMI:	Use i/p scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal.
HDMI:	Use i/p scaler function for HDMI video signals.
Off:	Do not use i/p scaler function.

❑ When the input source is set to “iPod/USB” and “Online Music”

On (Default)**:**	Use i/p scaler function.
Off:	Do not use i/p scaler function.

- “Analog & HDMI” can be set for input sources for which an HDMI input connector is assigned.
- Which items can be set depend on the input source assigned to each input connector.
- This function is not effective when the input signal is “x.v.Color”, 3D, sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color or computer resolutions.

■ Resolution

Set the output resolution. You can set “Resolution” separately for HDMI output of the analog video input and HDMI input.

Auto (Default)**:**	The resolution supported by the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR OUT connector is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set.
480p/576p / 1080i / 720p / 1080p / 1080p:24Hz / 4K / 4K(60/50) :	Set the output resolution.

- When “i/p Scaler” is set to “Analog & HDMI”, the resolution of both the analog video input signal and HDMI input signal can be set. (☞ p. 210)
- When set to “1080p:24Hz”, you can enjoy film-like pictures for film sources (in 24 Hz). For video sources and mixed sources, we recommend setting the resolution to “1080p”.
- It is not possible to convert a 50 Hz signal into 1080p/24Hz. It is output at a resolution of 1080p/50Hz.

■ Progressive Mode

Set an appropriate progressive conversion mode for the source video signal.

Auto (Default):	The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set.
Video:	Select mode suitable for video playback.
Video and Film:	Select mode suitable for video and 30-frame film material playback.

- This item can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “Off”. (☞ p. 210)

■ Aspect Ratio

Set the aspect ratio for the video signals output to the HDMI.

16:9 (Default):	Output at 16:9 aspect ratio.
4:3 :	Output at 4:3 aspect ratio with black bars on the sides of a 16:9 TV screen. (except for 480p/576p output)

- This item can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “Off”. (☞ p. 210)

Component Video Out

Set the zone to which the component video output connector is assigned.

MAIN ZONE (Default)**:**	Assigns the component video output connector to MAIN ZONE.
ZONE2:	Assigns the component video output connector to ZONE2.

On Screen Display

Select the on-screen display user interface preferences.

■ Volume

Sets where to display the volume level.

Bottom (Default)**:**	Display at the bottom.
Top:	Display at the top.
Off:	Turn display off.

- When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed text (closed captioning) or movie subtitles are present, set to “Top”.

■ Info

Displays status of operation temporarily when the input source is switched.

On (Default)**:**	Turn display on.
Off:	Turn display off.

■ Now Playing

Sets the display time for the playback display when the input source is “Online Music”, “iPod/USB”, “Bluetooth” or “Tuner”.

Always On (Default)**:**	Show display continuously.
Auto Off:	Show display for 30 seconds after operation.

TV Format

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

■ Format

NTSC (Default)**:**	Select NTSC output.
PAL:	Select PAL output.

- “Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.
  1. Press and hold the main unit’s ◁ and ▷ at the same time for at least 3 seconds.
     “∗Video Format <NTSC>” appears on the display.
  2. Use the main unit’s ◁ or ▷ and set the video signal format.
  3. Press the main unit’s ENTER to complete the setting.

NOTE

- When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.

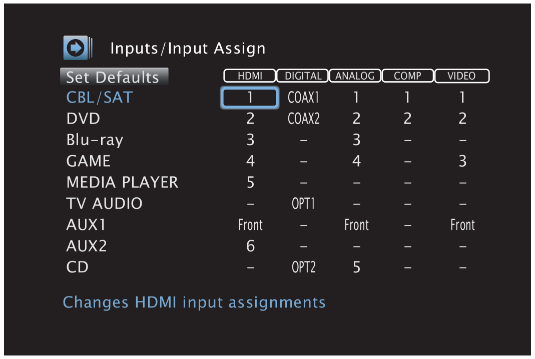
Inputs

Perform settings related to input source playback.
You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

Input Assign

By making connections as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit, you can just press one of the input source select buttons to easily play back audio or video from a connected device.

Please change the assignment of the HDMI input connector, digital audio input connector, analog audio input connector, component video input connector and video input connector when connecting an input source that differs from that printed to the audio/video input connectors of this unit.



Inputs/Input Assign

Set Defaults	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	COMP	VIDEO
CBL/SAT	1	COAX1	1	1	1
DVD	2	COAX2	2	2	2
Blu-ray	3	–	3	–	–
GAME	4	–	4	–	3
MEDIA PLAYER	5	–	–	–	–
TV AUDIO	–	OPT1	–	–	–
AUX1	Front	–	Front	–	Front
AUX2	6	–	–	–	–
CD	–	OPT2	5	–	–

Changes HDMI input assignments

- By default, each item is set as follows.

Input source	Input connector				
	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	COMP	VIDEO
CBL/SAT	1	COAX1	1	1	1
DVD	2	COAX2	2	2	2
Blu-ray	3	–	3	–	–
Game	4	–	4	–	3
Media Player	5	–	–	–	–
TV Audio	–	OPT1	–	–	–
AUX1	Front	–	Front	–	Front
AUX2	6	–	–	–	–
CD	–	OPT2	5	–	–

❑ TV set top box/satellite users please note

When using the digital audio output on a TV/satellite box:

To play the video signal assigned to “HDMI” combined with the audio signal assigned at “Input Assign” - “DIGITAL”, you will also need to select “Digital” in the “Input Mode”. (☞ p. 219)

HDMI

Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 7 / Front:	Assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.

✎

- When “HDMI Control” or “ARC” is set to “On” in the menu, “HDMI” cannot be assigned to “TV Audio”. (☞ p. 205)

DIGITAL

Set this to change the digital audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

COAX1 (Coaxial) **/** **COAX2 /** **OPT1** (Optical) **/ OPT2:**	Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

ANALOG

Set this to change the analog audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / Front:	Assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.

COMP (Component video)

Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2:	Assign the component video input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source.

VIDEO

Set this to change the composite video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

1 / 2 / 3 / Front:	Assign the video input connector to the selected input source.
– :	Do not assign a video input connector to the selected input source.

Set Defaults

The “Input Assign” settings are returned to the default settings.

Source Rename

Change the display name for input source.

This is convenient when the name of your device and the input source name of this unit are different. You can change the name to suit your needs. When the renaming is completed, the name is displayed on this unit’s display and on the menu screen.

CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / AUX1 / AUX2 / Media Player / CD / TV Audio / Phono:	Change the display name for input source.
Set Defaults:	The Source Rename settings are returned to the default settings.

- Up to 12 characters can be input. For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).

Hide Sources

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

Show (Default)**:**	Use this source.
Hide:	Do not use this source.

Source Level

This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source’s audio input.

Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

■ Source Level

❏ When the input source is set to “iPod/USB”, “Online Music”, “Bluetooth” or “Tuner”

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

■ Analog Inputs / Digital Inputs

❏ When the input source is set other than to “iPod/USB”, “Online Music”, “Bluetooth” or “Tuner”

-12dB – +12dB (Default : 0dB)

- The analog input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which “ANALOG” is assigned at “Input Assign”. (☞ p. 215)
- The digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which “DIGITAL” is assigned at “Input Assign”. (☞ p. 215)
- “Source Level” settings are stored for each input source.

Input Select

Set the audio input mode and decode mode of each input source.

The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.

- “Input Select” settings are stored for each input source.

Input Mode

Set the audio input modes for the different input sources.

It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to “Auto”.

Auto (Default):	Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.
HDMI:	Play only signals from HDMI input.
Digital:	Play only signals from digital audio input.
Analog:	Play only signals from analog audio input.

- When digital signals are properly input, the DIG. indicator lights on the display. If the DIG. indicator does not light, check “Input Assign” and the connections. (☞ p. 215)
- If “HDMI Control” is set to “On” and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR 1 connectors, the input mode whose input source is “TV Audio” is fixed to ARC.

Decode Mode

Set the audio decode mode for input source.

It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to “Auto”. But we recommend changing it to “PCM” or “DTS” if the start of the source is clipped or noise occurs.

Auto (Default):	Detect type of digital audio input signal and decode and play automatically.
PCM:	Decode and play only PCM input signals.
DTS:	Decode and play only DTS input signals.

- This item can be set for input sources for which “HDMI” or “DIGITAL” is assigned at “Input Assign”. (☞ p. 215)

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Auro-3D:	The input signal is decoded using an Auro-3D decoder.

- This item can always be set on models supporting Auro-3D.
- The sound modes you can select are Auro-3D or Auro-2D Surround when the “Decode Mode” setting is “Auro-3D”.

Speakers

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called "Audyssey® Setup".

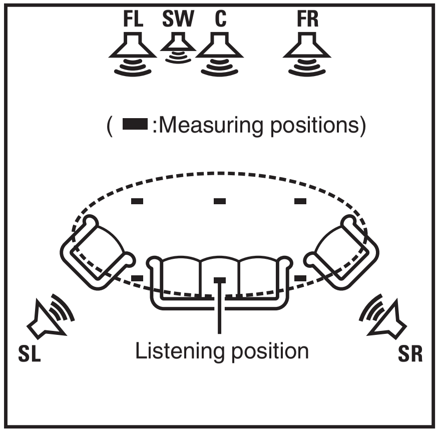
You do not have to perform Audyssey® Setup when you have already performed "Speaker Calibration" in "Setup Assistant".

To set up the speakers manually, use "Manual Setup" on the menu. (☞ p. 231)

Audyssey® Setup

To perform measurement, place the Sound calibration microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

When measuring the second and subsequent positions, install the Sound calibration microphone within 2 ft (60 cm) of the first measurement position (main listening position).



FL	Front speaker (L)
FR	Front speaker (R)
C	Center speaker
SW	Subwoofer
SL	Surround speaker (L)
SR	Surround speaker (R)

- If you perform the Audyssey® Setup, the Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ functions are enabled. (☞ p. 194)

About the main listening position

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Setup, place the Sound calibration microphone in the main listening position.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

About Audyssey Sub EQ HT™

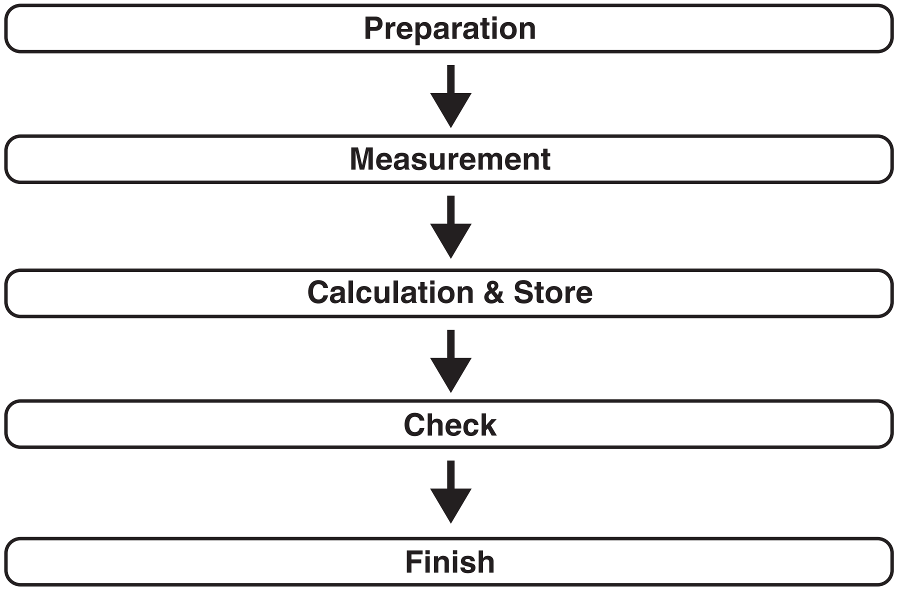
Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration of dual subwoofers seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together.

To run Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ you must select “Measure (2 spkrs)” in “Channel Select”. (☞ p. 223).

NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- Do not stand between the speakers and Sound calibration microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. Also, install the Sound calibration microphone at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from the wall. Failure to do so will result in inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, audible test tones will come from the speakers and subwoofer(s), but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in the room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating VOLUME ▲▼ on the remote control unit or MASTER VOLUME on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey® Setup.

Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)



1 **Attach the Sound calibration microphone to the supplied microphone stand or own tripod and install it at the main listening position.**

When installing the Sound calibration microphone, point the tip of the microphone toward the ceiling and adjust the height to match the height of the ears of a listener in a seated position.

2 **If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.**

❑ When using a subwoofer with a direct mode

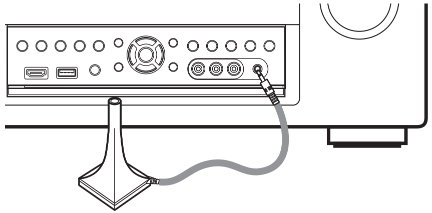
Set the direct mode to “On” and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

❑ When using a subwoofer without a direct mode

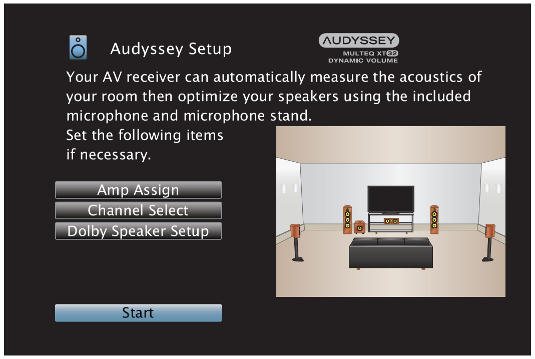
Make the following settings:

- Volume : 12 o’clock position
- Crossover frequency : Maximum/Highest Frequency
- Low pass filter : Off
- Standby mode : Off

3 Connect the Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



When the Sound calibration microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



Your AV receiver can automatically measure the acoustics of your room then optimize your speakers using the included microphone and microphone stand.
Set the following items if necessary.

4 Select “Start”, then press ENTER.

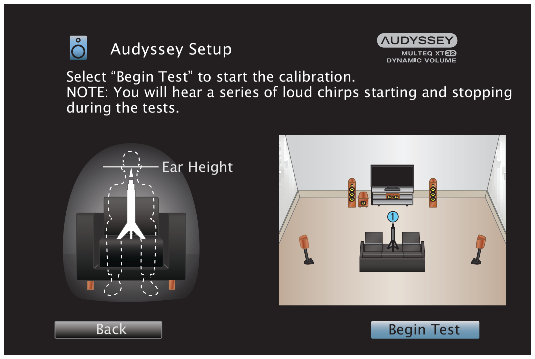
Audyssey® Setup can also make the following settings.

- **Amp Assign**
  The signals output from the SURROUND BACK, FRONT WIDE and HEIGHT1 speaker terminals can be switched in accordance with your speaker environment. (“Amp Assign” (☞ p. 231))
- **Channel Select**
  If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers and subwoofer.
- **Dolby Speaker Setup**
  Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.
  This can be set when using the Front Dolby Atmos Enabled, Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled or Back Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker.

5 Follow the instructions on the screen display and press “Next” to proceed further.

6 When the following screen is displayed, select “Begin Test” and then press ENTER.

Start the measurement of the first position.


Audyssey Setup
AUDYSSEY MULTEQ XT32 DYNAMIC VOLUME
Ear Height
Back
Begin Test

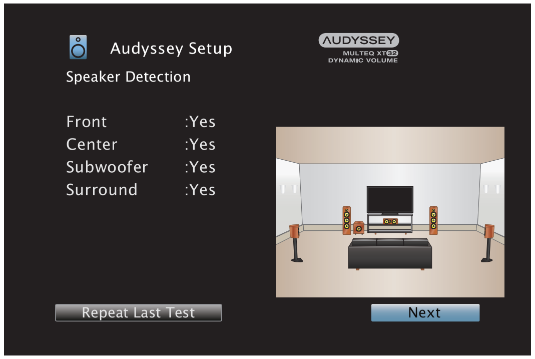
Select “Begin Test” to start the calibration.
NOTE: You will hear a series of loud chirps starting and stopping during the tests.

- Measurement requires several minutes.

NOTE

- **If “Caution!” is displayed on TV screen:**
  - Go to “Error messages” (☞ p. 228). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.
  - If the volume level for the subwoofer is not appropriate, an error message is displayed. See “Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust” (☞ p. 229).

7 When the detected speaker is displayed, select “Next” and then press ENTER.


Audyssey Setup
AUDYSSEY MULTEQ XT32 DYNAMIC VOLUME
Repeat Last Test
Next

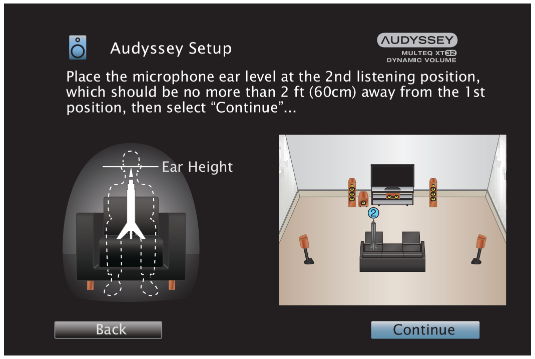
Speaker Detection

Front :Yes
Center :Yes
Subwoofer :Yes
Surround :Yes

8 Move the Sound calibration microphone to position 2, select “Continue”, then press ENTER.

The measurement of the second position starts.

Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.


Audyssey Setup
AUDYSSEY MULTEQ XT32 DYNAMIC VOLUME
Ear Height
Back
Continue

Place the microphone ear level at the 2nd listening position, which should be no more than 2 ft (60cm) away from the 1st position, then select “Continue”...

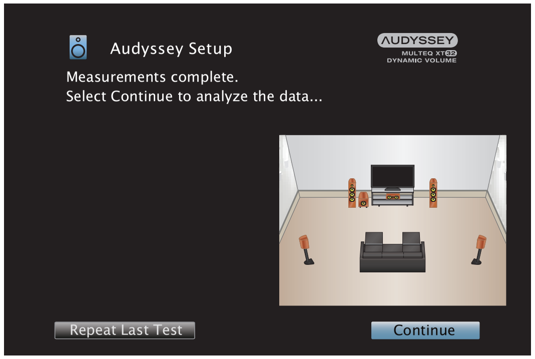
❑ Stopping Audyssey® Setup

① Press BACK to display the popup screen.
② Press ◁ to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

9 Repeat step 8, measuring positions 3 to 8.

- To skip measuring the fourth and subsequent listening position, press ◁ to select “Complete” and press ENTER to proceed to step 11.

10 Select “Continue”, then press ENTER.


Audyssey Setup
AUDYSSEY MULTEQ XT32 DYNAMIC VOLUME
Repeat Last Test
Continue

Measurements complete.
Select Continue to analyze the data...

Start the analysis and storage of the measurement results.

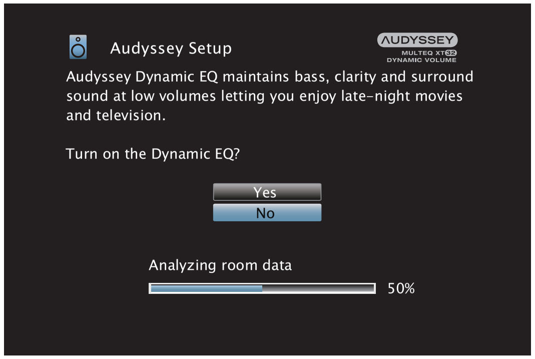
- Analysis takes several minutes to complete.
  The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

NOTE

- When the measurement results are being saved, make sure the power is not turned off.

11 Perform the settings for Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.

The following screen is displayed during the analysis. Configure the settings as preferred.



Audyssey Setup

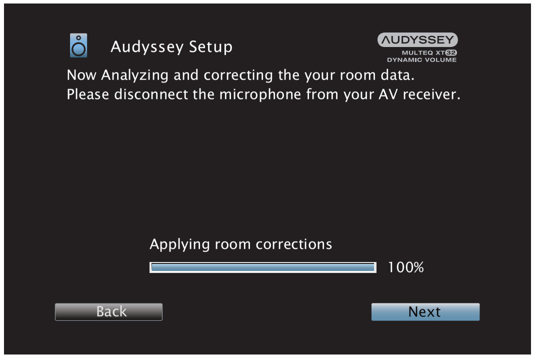
Audyssey Dynamic EQ maintains bass, clarity and surround sound at low volumes letting you enjoy late-night movies and television.

Turn on the Dynamic EQ?

Analyzing room data 50%

- Dynamic EQ corrects the frequency response in consideration of the audio characteristics of the room and human hearing ability so that sound can be heard even at low volume.
  This is recommended when using the unit with the volume turned down, e.g. when enjoying a movie or TV program in the middle of the night.
- Dynamic Volume adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

12 When the analysis and storage ends, unplug the Sound calibration microphone from the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit and then press “Next”.



Audyssey Setup

Now Analyzing and correcting the your room data.
Please disconnect the microphone from your AV receiver.

Applying room corrections 100%

13 Select “Details” and press ENTER to verify the measurement results.

- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.

NOTE

- Do not change the speaker connection or subwoofer volume after Audyssey® Setup. If these are changed, run Audyssey® Setup again in order to configure the optimum equalizer settings.

Error messages

An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

Examples	Error details	Measures
No speakers found.	• Sound calibration microphone is not detected. • Not all speakers could be detected.	• Connect the included Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit. • Check the speaker connections.
Ambient noise is too high or level is too low	• There is too much noise in the room. • Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low.	• Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away. • Perform again when the surroundings are quieter. • Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing. • Adjust the subwoofer's volume.
Front R : None	• The displayed speaker could not be detected.	• Check the connections of the displayed speaker.
Front R : Phase	• The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed.	• Check the polarity of the displayed speaker. • For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press ▷ to select "Ignore", then press ENTER.

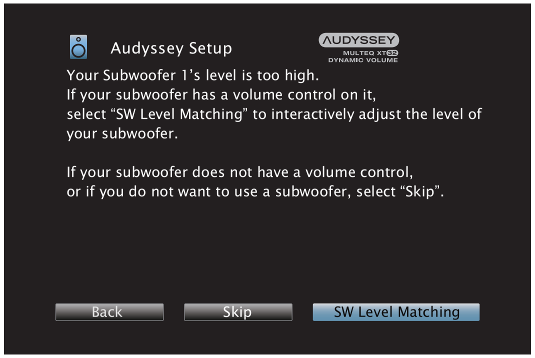
Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust

The optimal level of each subwoofer channel for Audyssey® Setup measurement is 75 dB.

During subwoofer level measurement, an error message is displayed when one level of subwoofers is outside the 72 – 78 dB range.

When using a subwoofer with built-in amplifier (active type), adjust the subwoofer volume so that the subwoofer level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.

【 Error message 】



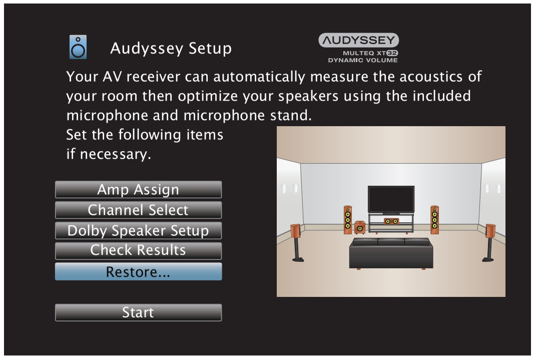
Your Subwoofer 1's level is too high.
If your subwoofer has a volume control on it,
select "SW Level Matching" to interactively adjust the level of your subwoofer.

If your subwoofer does not have a volume control,
or if you do not want to use a subwoofer, select "Skip".

1. **Select "SW Level Matching" and then press ENTER.**
2. **Adjust the volume control on your subwoofer so that the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.**
3. **When the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range, select "Next" and then press ENTER.**
   - If you use two subwoofers, the second subwoofer's adjustment will be started. Repeat the operation from step 2, 3.

Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings

If you set “Restore...” to “Restore”, you can return to Audyssey® Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT32) even when you have changed each setting manually.


Audyssey Setup
AUDYSSEY
MULTEQ XT32
DYNAMIC VOLUME

Your AV receiver can automatically measure the acoustics of your room then optimize your speakers using the included microphone and microphone stand.

Set the following items if necessary.

Amp Assign
Channel Select
Dolby Speaker Setup
Check Results
Restore...
Start

Manual Setup

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.

- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Setup, you will no longer be able to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® or Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. (☞ p. 194)
- “Manual Setup” can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

Amp Assign

Select the power amplifier usage method to match your speaker system.

■ Assign Mode

Select how to use the power amp.
You need to configure the detailed settings for the speaker configuration in accordance with the selected mode. Select Assign Mode configure the corresponding detailed settings.

9.1ch :	• Setting to use the 7-channel power amplifier within this unit and an external power amplifier connected to PRE OUT connector to play back up to 9.1-channels. • You can connect speakers for up to 13.1-channels for MAIN ZONE. Speakers to output audio are automatically switched for playing back up to 9.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode.
7.1ch :	• Settings to assign all power amplifier within this unit to MAIN ZONE to play back up to 7.1-channels. • You can connect speakers for up to 11.1-channels for MAIN ZONE. Speakers to output audio are automatically switched for playing back up to 7.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode.

5.1ch + ZONE2 (Default)**:**	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE2 to 2-channels.
5.1ch + ZONE3 :	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE3 to 2-channels
5.1ch + ZONE2/3-MONO :	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for ZONE2 and ZONE3 each to a different channel.
5.1ch (Bi-Amp) :	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for front speaker bi-amp connection to 2-channels.
7.1ch/2ch Front :	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers in this unit for connecting 2-channel playback speakers to 2-channels. • You can switch the front speakers when using 2-channel playback in direct mode or stereo mode, or when using multi-channel surround playback. When setting speakers for 2-channel playback, also perform the “2ch Playback” setting. (☞ p. 246)
5.1ch + Front B :	• Setting to assign the power amplifiers within this unit for connecting the second set of front speakers. • You can switch between the desired combination of front speakers A and front speakers B. Switch the front speaker using the “Front Speaker” setting. (☞ p. 246)

■ Floor

❏ Layout

Select the floor speakers location.

5ch & SB & FW*1 :	This layout combines a surround back or front wide speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
5ch & SB*2 (Default) :	This layout combines a surround back speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
5ch & FW*1 :	This layout combines a front wide speaker with the basic 5-channel layout.
5ch*2 :	This is a basic 5-channel layout that uses front speakers, center speakers and surround speakers.

■ Height

❏ Height Sp

Select the number of the height speakers and ceiling speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

None :	Uses no height and ceiling speakers.
2ch (Default) :	Uses a set of (two) height speakers or ceiling speakers.
4ch :	Uses two sets of (four) height speakers or ceiling speakers.

❏ Dolby Sp

Select the number of the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

None (Default) :	Uses no Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
2ch :	Uses a set of (two) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
4ch :	Uses two sets of (four) Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

---

*1 This can be selected when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch” or “7.1ch” in the menu. (☞ p. 231)

*2 This can be selected when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch”, “7.1ch” or “7.1ch/2ch Front” in the menu. (☞ p. 231)

❑ Layout

Select the height, ceiling, or Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker location.

The layouts that can be selected differ depending on the combinations of “Assign Mode” and “Floor” - “Layout” in the menu. (“Assign Mode” (☞ p. 231), “Floor” - “Layout” (☞ p. 233))

Settings				AUDIO OUT connectors	
Height Speakers	**Dolby Speakers**	**NOTE**	**Layout**	**HEIGHT1**	**HEIGHT2**
None	None		-	-	-
2ch	None		Front Height (Default)	Front Height	-
			Top Front	Top Front	-
			Top Middle	Top Middle	-
			Top Rear	Top Rear	-
			Rear Height	Rear Height	-
4ch	None	∗1	Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
			Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
			Front Height & Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height
			Top Front & Top Rear	Top Front	Top Rear
			Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
			Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height
None	2ch		Front Dolby	Front Dolby	-
			Surround Dolby	Surround Dolby	-
			Back Dolby∗2	Back Dolby	-

∗1 This can be selected when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch” in the menu.

∗2 This can be selected when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch” and “Floor” - “Layout” is set to “5ch & SB & FW” or “5ch & SB” in the menu.

Settings				AUDIO OUT connectors	
Height Speakers	**Dolby Speakers**	**NOTE**	**Layout**	**HEIGHT1**	**HEIGHT2**
2ch	2ch	*1	Front Dolby & Top Rear	Front Dolby	Top Rear
			Front Dolby & Rear Height	Front Dolby	Rear Height
			Front Height & Surr. Dolby	Front Height	Surround Dolby
			Top Front & Surround Dolby	Top Front	Surround Dolby
None	4ch	*1	Front Dolby & Surround Dolby	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby

*1 This can be selected when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch” in the menu.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Settings				AUDIO OUT connectors	
Height Speakers	**Dolby Speakers**	**NOTE**	**Layout**	**HEIGHT1**	**HEIGHT2**
4ch	None	*1	Front Height & Surr. Height	Front Height	Surround Height
			Front Height & Rear Height*4	Front Height	Rear Height

*1 This can be selected when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch” in the menu.

*4 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

■ Pre-out

When “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch”, selects the PRE OUT connectors that connect the external power amplifier used in MAIN ZONE.

The PRE OUT connectors that can be selected differ depending on the combination of “Floor” - “Layout” and “Height” - “Layout” settings configured in the menu.

Surr. Back (Default) :	The surround back left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
Front Wide:	The front wide left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
Front:	The front left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
HEIGHT1 *1:	The HEIGHT1 left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
HEIGHT2 *2:	The HEIGHT2 left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
Surround Back & HEIGHT2 *2:	The surround back/HEIGHT2 left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
Front Wide & HEIGHT2 *2:	The front wide/HEIGHT2 left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
HEIGHT1 & HEIGHT2 *1*2:	The HEIGHT1/HEIGHT2 left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
Front & HEIGHT2 *2:	The front/HEIGHT2 left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.
Front & Front Wide :	The front/front wide left and right pre-amp outputs are connected to an external amplifier.

*1 The name of the speaker set for “HEIGHT1” is displayed in “Height” - “Layout” in the menu.

*2 The name of the speaker set for “HEIGHT2” is displayed in “Height” - “Layout” in the menu.

■ View Terminal Config.

This shows how to connect the speaker terminals and PRE OUT connectors for your “Amp Assign” setting on the menu screen.

Speaker Config.

Select whether or not speakers are present, playback capacity for low bass frequencies and speaker size.

- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in “Amp Assign” are set to “None”, “None” is automatically set for Height2.

Front

Set the front speaker size.

Large (Default)**:**	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small:	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.

- When “Subwoofer” is set to “No”, “Front” is automatically set to “Large”.
- When “Front” is set to “Small”, you cannot set speakers other than “Front” to “Large”.

Center

Set the presence and size of the center speaker.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when a center speaker is not connected.

Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

2 spkrs:	Use two subwoofers.
1 spkr (Default)**:**	Use only one subwoofer.
None:	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.

- When “Subwoofer” is set to “None” and you set “Front” to “Small”, “Subwoofer” is automatically set to “1 spkr”.

Surround

Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround speakers are not connected.

- When “Surround” is set to “None”, “Surr. Back”, “Front Wide”, “Surround Dolby” and “Back Dolby” are automatically set to “None”.

Surr. Back

Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.

2 spkrs (Default)**:**	Use two surround back speakers.
1 spkr:	Use only one surround back speaker. Connect to the L terminal to SURROUND BACK when this setting is selected.

- When “Surr. Back” is set to “None” or “1 spkr”, “Back Dolby” is automatically set to “None”.

■ Front Wide

Set the presence and size of the front wide speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front wide speakers are not connected.

■ Front Height

Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front height speakers are not connected.

■ Front Dolby

Set the presence and size of the front Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the front Dolby speakers are not connected.

■ Top Front

Set the presence and size of the top front speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top front speakers are not connected.

Top Middle

Set the presence and size of the top middle speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top middle speakers are not connected.

Surround Dolby

Set the presence and size of the surround Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround Dolby speakers are not connected.

Top Rear

Set the presence and size of the top rear speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the top rear speakers are not connected.

Rear Height

Set the presence and size of the rear height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the rear height speakers are not connected.

Back Dolby

Set the presence and size of the back Dolby speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the back Dolby speakers are not connected.

- When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in “Amp Assign” are set to “None”, “None” is automatically set for Height2.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Surround Height

Set the presence and size of the surround height speakers.

Large:	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small (Default)**:**	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
None:	Select when the surround height speakers are not connected.

- When “Front Height” is set to “None”, “Surround Height” is automatically set to “None”.

Distances

Set distance from listening position to speakers.

Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.

■ Unit

Set the unit of distance.

Feet (Default)

Meters

■ Step

Set the minimum variable width of the distance.

1 ft / 0.1 ft (Default: 1 ft)

0.1 m / 0.01 m

■ Set the distance

0.0 ft – 60.0 ft / 0.00 m – 18.00 m

✎

- The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the “Amp Assign” and “Speaker Config.” settings. (“Amp Assign” (☞ p. 231), “Speaker Config.” (☞ p. 237))
- Default settings:
  Front L / Front R / F. Height L / F. Height R / F. Wide L / F. Wide R / Center / F. Dolby L / F. Dolby R / Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2: 12.0 ft (3.60 m)
  Speakers other than the above: 10.0 ft (3.00 m)
- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).

Dolby Speaker Setup

Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

3.0 ft - 11.0 ft / 0.90 m - 3.30 m(Default : 6.0 ft / 1.80 m)

- This can be set when “Front Dolby”, “Surround Dolby” or “Back Dolby” is set to “Large” or “Small” in “Speaker Config.”.

Set Defaults

The “Distances” settings are returned to the default settings.

Levels

Set the volume of the test tone to be the same at the listening position when it is output from each speaker.

Test Tone Start

A test tone is output from the selected speaker.
While listening to the test tone, adjust the volume output from the selected speaker.

–12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

- The set “Levels” are reflected in all sound modes.
- If you wish to adjust the channel level for each input source, carry out the settings in “Channel Level Adjust”. (☞ p. 141)
- When headphones are connected to the PHONES connector on this unit, you cannot set “Levels”.

Set Defaults

The “Levels” settings are returned to the default settings.

Crossovers

Set in accordance with the lower limit frequency of the base frequencies that can be played back through each speaker. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.

■ Speaker Selection

Selects how to set the crossover frequency.

All (Default)**:**	Sets the same crossover frequency for all speakers.
Individual:	Selects the crossover points for each speaker individually.

■ Set the crossover frequency

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 80 Hz)

- “Crossovers” can be set when the “Subwoofer Mode” setting is “LFE+Main”, or when you have a speaker that is set to “Small”. (☞ p. 245)
- The default crossover frequency is “80 Hz”, which will work best with the widest variety of speakers. We recommend setting to a higher frequency that the crossover frequency when small speakers are used. For example, set to “250 Hz” when the frequency range of the speakers is 250 Hz – 20 kHz.
- Sound below the crossover frequency is cut off from the output of the speakers set in “Small”. This cut off bass frequency is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.
- The speakers that can be set when “Individual” is selected differ depending on to the “Subwoofer Mode” setting. (☞ p. 245)
  - When “LFE” is selected, speakers set to “Small” at “Speaker Config.” can be set. If the speakers are set to “Large”, “Full Band” is displayed and the setting cannot be made. (☞ p. 237)
  - When “LFE+Main” is selected, speakers can be set regardless of the “Speaker Config.” setting. (☞ p. 237)

Bass

Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback.

■ Subwoofer Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

LFE (Default)**:**	The low range signal of the channel set to “Small” speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.
LFE+Main:	The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.

- “Subwoofer Mode” can be set when “Speaker Config.” - “Subwoofer” in the menu is set to other than “None”. (☞ p. 237)
- Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass.
- If “Speaker Config.” - “Front” and “Center” are set to “Large”, and “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE”, no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode. (☞ p. 237) Select “LFE+Main” if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer.

■ LPF for LFE

Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency (low pass filter point) of the subwoofer.

80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 120 Hz)

Front Speaker

Set the front speaker A/B to use for every sound mode.

A (Default)**:**	Front speaker A is used.
B :	Front speaker B is used.
A+B :	Both front speakers A and B are used.

- This can be set when “Assign Mode” is set to “5.1ch + Front B”. (☞ p. 232)

2ch Playback

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

■ Setting

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

Auto (Default)**:**	The settings in “Speakers” are applied. (☞ p. 220)
Manual:	Set the speakers for 2-channel playback. Make the following settings:

■ Front

Set the size of the front speakers for 2-channel playback.

Large (Default)**:**	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
Small:	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.

- When “Speaker Config.”-“Subwoofer” in the menu is set to “None”, “Large” is automatically set. (☞ p. 237)

Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

Yes (Default)**:**	Use a subwoofer.
No:	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.

- When “Speaker Config.”-“Subwoofer” in the menu is set to “None”, No is automatically set. (☞ p. 237) If the “Front” setting is “Small”, the setting is automatically “Yes”.

SW Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

LFE (Default)**:**	When “2ch Playback”-“Front” is set to “Large”, only LFE signals are output from the subwoofer. Also, when “2ch Playback” - “Front” is set to “Small”, the front channel low range signals are added to the LFE signals and output from the subwoofer.
LFE+Main:	The front channel low range signal is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.

- This can be set when “2ch Playback”-“Subwoofer” is set to “Yes”.

Crossover

Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer.

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 80 Hz)

- This can be set when “2ch Playback”-“Subwoofer” is set to “Yes”.
- When “2ch Playback”-“Front” is set to “Large” and “SW Mode” is set to LFE, “Full Band” is displayed and this cannot be set.

Distance FL/Distance FR

Set distance from main listening position to speaker.

0.0ft – 60.0ft (Default : 12.0ft) **/**
0.00m – 18.00m (Default : 3.60m)

- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).

Level FL/Level FR

Adjust the level of each channel.

-12.0dB – +12.0dB (Default : 0.0dB)

Network

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings.
If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set “DHCP” to “On”. (Use the default setting.) This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN).
When assigning an IP address to each device manually, you need to assign an IP address to this unit using the “IP Address” settings, and enter information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask, etc.

Information

Display network information.

Friendly Name / Connection / SSID / DHCP / IP Address / MAC Address

- MAC Address is required to create a vTuner account.

Connection

Choose whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.
When connecting to the network using wired LAN, select “Wired (Ethernet)” after connecting a LAN cable,
When connecting to the network using wireless LAN, select “Wireless (Wi-Fi)” and configure the “Wi-Fi Setup”. (☞ p. 250)

■ Wi-Fi

You can stop the Wi-Fi function when connecting this unit to the network using Wired LAN.

Enabled (Default)**:**	The Wi-Fi function is used.
Disabled:	The Wi-Fi function is stopped.

Connect Using

Select the method for connecting to the home network (LAN).

Wired (Ethernet):	Use a LAN cable to connect to a network.
Wireless (Wi-Fi):	Use the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) function to connect to a network.

- This can be set when “Wi-Fi” is set to “Enabled”. (☞ p. 249)

Wi-Fi Setup

Connect to a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router.
The router can be connected in the following ways. Select the connection method to suit your home environment.

Scan Networks

Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of possible networks shown on the TV screen.

1. Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of wireless networks.

   Select “Rescan” if the network cannot be found.
2. Enter your password and select “OK”.

Use iOS Device

Use your iOS device (iPhone/iPod/iPad) to connect to the network. By connecting your iOS device to this unit, the unit can be automatically connected to the same network as your device.

This unit can be connected to your iOS device in two ways, using a USB cable and using Wi-Fi.

❑ When connecting using Wi-Fi

1. Select “Wireless connection” on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router and select “Denon AVR-X4200W” from “SET UP NEW AIRPLAY SPEAKER...” at the bottom of the Wi-Fi configuration screen of your iOS device.
3. Tap “Next” on the screen of the iOS device.

- The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 7 or later.

❑ When using a USB cable

1. Select “USB cable” on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) and connect it to the USB port on the front panel using a USB cable.
3. Select “Connect” on the TV screen.
4. Tap “Allow” when the connection message appears on the screen of your iOS device.

- The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 5 or later.

■ WPS Router

Use a WPS-compatible router to connect.

There are two ways to connect, using the push button method or the PIN code method. Select the connection method to match your router.

❑ When connecting using the push button method

1. Select “Push Button” on the TV screen.
2. Switch to the WPS mode by pressing the WPS button of the router you wish to connect to.
   - The time for pressing the button varies depending on the router.
3. Select “Connect” on the TV screen within 2 minutes.

❑ When connecting using the PIN code method

1. Select “PIN” on the TV screen.
2. Register the PIN code of the unit in the router.

Manual

Enter the name (SSID) and password of the network you wish to connect to.

1. Set the following items.

SSID:	Input the name of the wireless network (SSID).
Security:	Select the encryption method according to the encryption setting of the access point you are using.
Password:	Input the password.
Default Key:	Select the Default Key. When connecting to a “WEP” encrypted network, “Default Key” menu is displayed.

2. Select “Connect” at the end of the setting.

✎

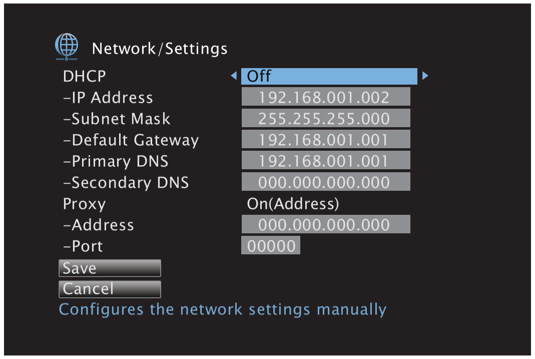
- The wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) settings of this unit can also be configured from a PC or tablet that supports wireless LAN connection.
- When using a device that has a firmware version of iOS 7 or later, “When connecting using Wi-Fi” (☞ p. 251) in “Use iOS Device”.

1. Press and hold the DIMMER and STATUS buttons on the main unit for at least 3 seconds when the power of the unit is on.
2. Connect the wireless LAN of the PC or tablet used to “Denon AVR-X4200W” when the message “Connect your Wi-Fi device to Wi-Fi network called “Denon AVR-X4200W”” appears in the display.
3. Start up the browser and enter “192.168.1.16” in the URL.
4. Use the browser to enter the settings, select “Connect” and then exit the settings.

Settings

Configure the proxy settings and IP address.

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), the information required for network connection such as the IP address will be automatically configured since the DHCP function is set to “On” in the default settings of this unit.
- Set up the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway and DNS server information only when assigning a fixed IP address or when connecting to a network without DHCP function.
- Configure the proxy settings when using a proxy server to connect to the Internet.



```
Network/Settings
DHCP                 Off
-IP Address           192.168.001.002
-Subnet Mask          255.255.255.000
-Default Gateway      192.168.001.001
-Primary DNS          192.168.001.001
-Secondary DNS        000.000.000.000
Proxy                On(Address)
-Address              000.000.000.000
-Port                00000
Save
Cancel
Configures the network settings manually
```

DHCP

Selects how to connect to the network.

On (Default)**:**	Configure the network settings automatically from your router.
Off:	Configure the network settings manually.

IP Address

Set the IP address within the ranges shown below.

- The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.
  CLASS A:10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254
  CLASS B:172.16.0.1 - 172.31.255.254
  CLASS C:192.168.0.1 - 192.168.255.254

Subnet Mask

When connecting an xDSL modem or connector adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input 255.255.255.0.

■ Default Gateway

When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.

■ Primary DNS, Secondary DNS

If there is only one DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider, input it at “Primary DNS”. If two or more DNS are provided by your provider, enter both “Primary DNS” and “Secondary DNS”.

■ Proxy

Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.

Make the proxy settings only when you connect to the Internet via a proxy server that is on your internal network or provided by your provider, etc.

On(Address):	Select when inputting by address.
On(Name):	Select when inputting by domain name.
Off (Default)**:**	Disables the proxy server.

■ Port

Enter port number.

- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings. (☞ p. 84)
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.

Network Control

Enables network communication in standby power mode.

Off In Standby:	Suspend network function during standby.
Always On (Default):	Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.

- When using the web control function or Denon 2015 AVR Remote, use with the “Network Control” setting set to “Always On”.

NOTE

- When “Network Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

Friendly Name

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

■ Friendly Name

Selects Friendly Name from the list.

When you select “Other”, you can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

Home Theater / Living Room / Family Room / Guest Room / Kitchen / Dining Room / Master Bedroom / Bedroom / Den / Office / Other

- Up to 63 characters can be input.
  For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).
- The default Friendly Name on first use is “Denon AVR-X4200W”.

■ Set Defaults

Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.

Diagnostics

Used to check the network connection.

■ Physical Connection

Checks the physical LAN port connection.

OK	
Error:	The LAN cable is not connected. Check the connection.

- When connected using a wireless LAN, “Connection Wireless (Wi-Fi)” will be displayed.

■ Router Access

Checks the connection from this unit to the router.

OK	
Error:	Failed to communicate with the router. Check the router settings.

■ Internet Access

Checks whether this unit has access to the Internet (WAN).

OK	
Error:	Failed to connect to the Internet. Check the Internet connection environment or router settings.

Maintenance Mode

Use when receiving maintenance from a Denon service engineer or custom installer. Ordinarily, this mode isn’t suitable for use by the end user, only by a trained service technician or custom installation professional.

NOTE

- Only use this function if so instructed by a Denon serviceperson or installer.

General

Make various other settings.

Language

Set the language for display the menu on the TV screen.

English / Français / Español (Default : English)

- "Language" can also be set up by the following operation. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the settings.

1. Press and hold the main unit's ◁ and ▷ at the same time for at least 3 seconds.
   "∗Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.
2. Press the main unit's ▽.
   "∗GUI Language <ENGLISH>" appears on the display.
3. Use the main unit's ◁ or ▷ and set the language.
4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

ECO

Configure the settings of the ECO Mode and auto standby mode.

■ ECO Mode

This mode can reduce the power consumption when the power of the unit is on.

On:	Reduce the power consumption.
Auto:	The power consumption is automatically reduced to match the volume.
Off (Default):	Do not reduce the power consumption.

- When you want to output audio at a high volume level, it is recommended to set "ECO Mode" to "Off".
- Eco mode can also be switched by pressing ECO on the remote control unit.

■ Power On Default

Set the mode to ECO when the power is on.

Last (Default)**:**	The ECO Mode will be set to the previous setting before the power was switched off.
On:	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in “On”.
Auto:	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in “Auto”.
Off:	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in “Off”.

■ On Screen Display

Display the power consumption of this unit using a meter on the TV screen.

Always On:	Always display the meter on the TV screen.
Auto (Default)**:**	Display the meter when changing the mode or volume.
Off:	Do not display the meter.

Auto Standby

Set so the unit power automatically switches to standby.

❑ MAIN ZONE

Sets the time for switching to auto standby when there are no audio or video signals input into this unit.
Before the unit enters standby mode, “Auto Standby” is displayed on the unit display and the menu screen.

60 min:	The unit goes into standby after 60 minutes.
30 min:	The unit goes into standby after 30 minutes.
15 min:	The unit goes into standby after 15 minutes.
Off (Default)**:**	The unit does not go into standby automatically.

❑ ZONE2 / ZONE3

When there are no operations for a certain period of time as set here, the power is automatically shut off even if there is audio or video input.

8 hours:	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 the standby state after about 8 hours.
4 hours:	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 4 hours.
2 hours:	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 2 hours.
Off (Default)**:**	Does not automatically switch ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state.

ZONE2 Setup/ZONE3 Setup

Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.

- Values set for “Volume Limit” and “Power On Volume” are displayed according to the setting specified for the volume “Scale” (☞ p. 193).

Bass

Adjust bass.

-14dB – +14dB (Default : 0dB)

Treble

Adjust treble.

-14dB – +14dB (Default : 0dB)

High Pass Filter

Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass.

On:	The low range is attenuated.
Off (Default)**:**	The low range is not attenuated.

Lch Level

Adjust the left channel output level.

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

Rch Level

Adjust the right channel output level.

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

Channel

Set whether to playback in stereo or monaural.

Stereo (Default)**:**	Stereo playback.
Mono:	Monaural playback.

HDMI Audio (ZONE2 only)

Selects the audio signal format for playing an HDMI source in ZONE2.

Through (Default):	The HDMI audio signal is passed through this unit to the device in ZONE2.
PCM:	The HDMI audio signal input into this unit is converted to a PCM signal that can be output from the ZONE2 PRE OUT connectors or speaker terminals.

Volume Level

Set the volume output level.

Variable (Default):	Volume can be adjusted.
1 - 98 **(–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB) :**	Volume is fixed at the desired level. The volume cannot be adjusting using the remote control unit.

Volume Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

60 (-20 dB) / 70 (-10 dB) / 80 (0 dB) (Default : 70 (-10 dB))	
Off:	Do not set a maximum volume.

- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (☞ p. 262)

Power On Volume

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

Last (Default):	Use the memorized setting from the last session.
Mute:	Always mute when power is turned on.
1 - 98 **(–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB) :**	The volume is adjusted to the set level.

- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (☞ p. 262)

■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

Full (Default)**:**	The sound is muted entirely.
–40 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.
–20 dB :	The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

Zone Rename

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3

Set Defaults:	The default setting is restored for the edited zone name.

- Up to 10 characters can be input.
  For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).

Quick Select Names

Change the quick select name that appears on the TV screen to one you prefer.

Quick Select 1 / Quick Select 2 / Quick Select 3 / Quick Select 4

Set Defaults:	The default setting is restored for the edited quick select name.

- Up to 16 characters can be input.
  For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 183).

Trigger Out 1/Trigger Out 2

Select the conditions for activating trigger out.
For details about how to connect the TRIGGER OUT jacks, see “TRIGGER OUT jacks” (☞ p. 87).

☐ When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3)

Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to “On”.

☐ When setting for input source

Activate trigger out when the input source set to “On” is selected.

☐ When setting for HDMI monitor

Activate trigger out when the HDMI monitor set to “On” is selected.

On:	Activate trigger on this mode.
– – –:	Do not activate trigger on this mode.

Front Display

Makes settings related to the display on this unit.

■ Dimmer

Adjust the display brightness of this unit.

Bright (Default)**:**	Normal display brightness.
Dim:	Reduced display brightness.
Dark:	Very low display brightness.
Off:	Turns the display off.

- You can also adjust the display by pressing DIMMER on the main unit.

■ Channel Indicators

Sets whether to use the input signal display or output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

Input:	Uses the input signal display for the channel indication on the display.
Output (Default)**:**	Uses the output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

Firmware

Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display for updates and upgrades.

Update

Updates the firmware of this unit.

Update:	Execute the update process. When the update starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the update, the progress is shown on the display.

- This unit automatically retries updating if updating fails. If the update still fails, either one of the following messages will appear on the screen. If the display reads as shown below, check the settings and network environment, then update again.

Display	Description
Updating fail	Updating failed.
Login failed	Failure to log into server.
Server is busy	Server is busy. Wait a while then try again.
Connection fail	Failure in connecting to server.
Download fail	Downloading of the firmware has failed.

Notifications

When the latest firmware is available, a notification message is displayed on the TV screen at power on.

The notification message is displayed for about 40 seconds when the power is turned on.

Update

On (Default):	Display update message.
Off:	Do not display update message.

Upgrade

On (Default):	Display upgrade message.
Off:	Do not display upgrade message.

Add New Feature

Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an upgrade.

Upgrade Package:	Display the items to be upgraded.
Upgrade Status:	Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.
Upgrade Start:	Execute the upgrade process. When the upgrade starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the upgrade, the amount of upgrade time which has elapsed is displayed.

- See the Denon website for details about upgrades.
- When the procedure is complete, “Registered” is displayed in this menu and upgrades can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, “Not Registered” is displayed.
  The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.
  The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit’s △ and INFO for at least 3 seconds.
- If the upgrade is not successful, an error message identical to those in “Firmware” - “Update” will appear on the display. Check the settings and network environment and then perform the upgrade again.

Notes concerning use of “Update” and “Add New Feature”

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for an Internet connection. (☞ p. 84)
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the ⏻ on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. “Update retry” appears on the display and update restarts from the point at which update failed. If the error continues despite this, check the network environment.

- Information regarding the “Update” function and “Add New Feature” will be announced on the Denon website each time related plans are defined.

Information

Show information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.

■ Audio

Show the audio information for MAIN ZONE.

Sound Mode:	The currently set sound mode.
Input Signal:	The input signal type.
Format:	The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround, LFE).
Sample Rate:	The input signal’s sampling frequency.
Offset:	The dialogue normalization correction value.
Flag:	This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. “MATRIX” is displayed with DTS-ES Matrix input signals, “DISCRETE” with DTS-ES Discrete signals.

■ Video

Show the HDMI input/output signals and HDMI monitor information for MAIN ZONE.

HDMI Signal Info.

Resolution / Color Space / Pixel Depth

HDMI Monitor 1 / HDMI Monitor 2

Interface / Resolutions

■ ZONE

Show information about current settings.

MAIN ZONE:	This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source.
ZONE2:	This item shows information about settings for ZONE2.
ZONE3:	This item shows information about settings for ZONE3.

■ Firmware

Version:	Displays information for the current firmware.
DTS Version:	Displays the current DTS version.

Notifications

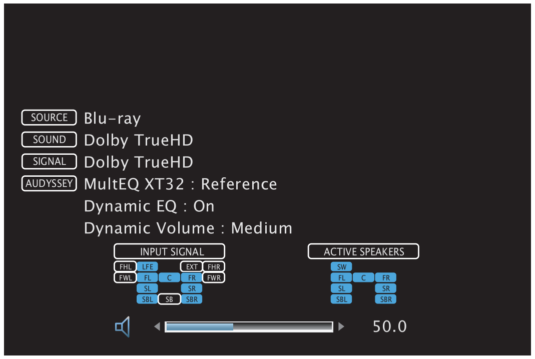
Displays and sets notifications.

Also, sets whether or not to display the notification when the power is turned on.

Notification Alerts

On (Default)**:**	Notification messages are displayed.
Off:	Notification messages are not displayed.

- Press INFO on the remote control unit to display current source name, volume, sound mode name, and other information at the bottom of the screen.



SOURCE Blu-ray
SOUND Dolby TrueHD
SIGNAL Dolby TrueHD
AUDYSSEY MultEQ XT32 : Reference
Dynamic EQ : On
Dynamic Volume : Medium

Usage Data

To help us improve our products and customer service, Denon collects anonymous information about how you use your AV receiver (such as frequently used input sources and sound modes and speaker settings).

Denon will never provide any information we collect to third parties.

Yes:	Provide information on the operating status of this unit.
No:	Do not provide information on the operating status of this unit.

Setup Lock

Protect settings from inadvertent changes.

■ Lock

On:	Turn protection on.
Off (Default)**:**	Turn protection off.

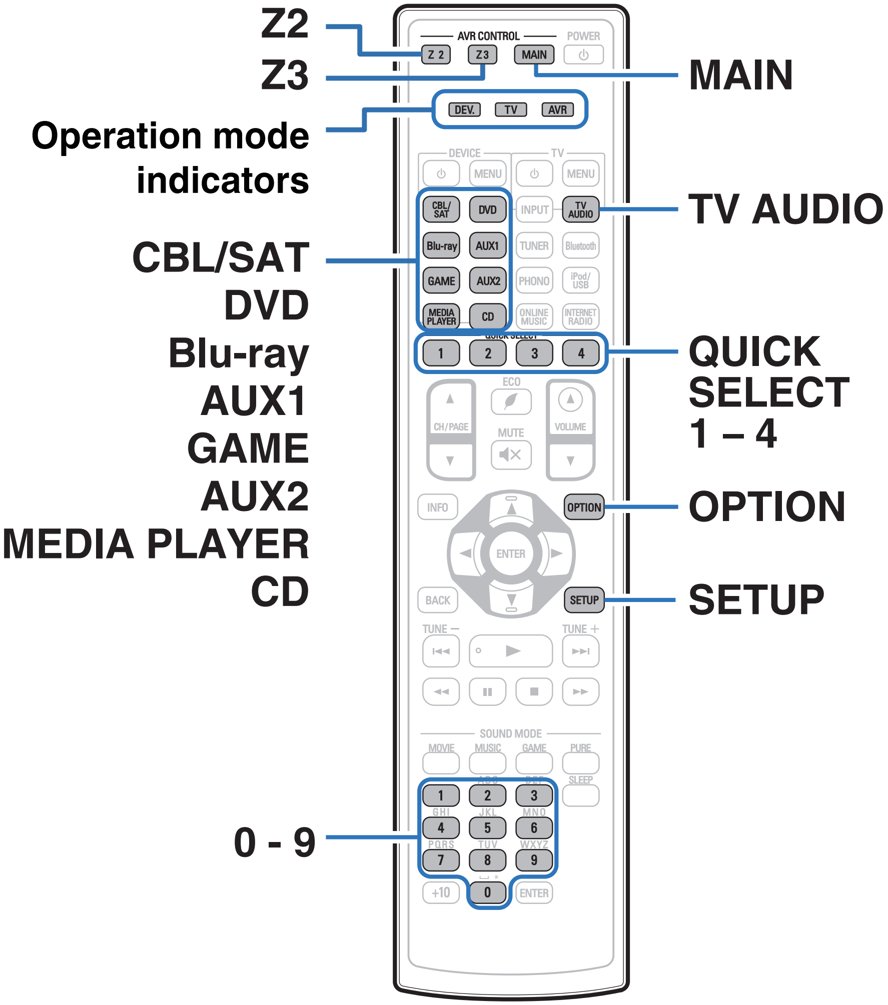
- When cancelling the setting, set “Lock” to “Off”.

NOTE

- When “Lock” is set to “On”, no setting items are displayed except for “Setup Lock”.

Operating external devices with the remote control unit

When preset codes are registered in the included remote control unit, it can then be used to operate any devices you have, such as DVD players or TVs made by different manufacturers.


Z2
Z3
Operation mode indicators
CBL/SAT
DVD
Blu-ray
AUX1
GAME
AUX2
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
0 - 9
MAIN
TV AUDIO
QUICK SELECT 1 – 4
OPTION
SETUP

Registering preset codes

There are two methods for registering preset codes; the simple method for registering preset codes of Denon players, and the method for registering the preset numbers of other manufacturers’ devices.

- “Registering Denon players” (☞ p. 272)
- “Registering by entering preset numbers” (☞ p. 273)

■ Registering Denon players

Use the following simple method to register the preset codes of Denon Blu-ray Disc players, DVD players and CD players.

❑ Registering Blu-ray Disc players

1 **Press and hold down Blu-ray and OPTION until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators on the remote are flashing green, then release.**

❑ Registering DVD players

1 **Press and hold down DVD and OPTION until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators on the remote are flashing green, then release.**

❑ Registering CD players

1 **Press and hold down CD and OPTION until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators on the remote are flashing green, then release.**

❑ Registering multiple players at the same time

1 **Press and hold down QUICK SELECT 1 – 4 and OPTION until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators on the remote are flashing green, then release.**

Devices to be registered at the same time			Press and hold down the buttons
Blu-ray Disc player	DVD player	CD player	
✓	✓		QUICK SELECT 1 and OPTION
✓		✓	QUICK SELECT 2 and OPTION
	✓	✓	QUICK SELECT 3 and OPTION
✓	✓	✓	QUICK SELECT 4 and OPTION

NOTE

- Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate. In this case, try “Registering by entering preset numbers” (☞ p. 273).

■ Registering by entering preset numbers

The following table shows the device groups that can be registered for each of the input source select buttons. Check the preset number of the device you want to register beforehand in the “Remote Control Preset Codes” file.

http://manuals.denon.com/AVRX4200W/preset/AVRX4200WPresetCodes.pdf

Button	Device groups that can be registered
CBL/SAT	CBL/SAT group
Blu-ray	VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group
GAME	CBL/SAT group, VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
MEDIA PLAYER	CBL/SAT group
DVD	VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group
AUX1	CBL/SAT group, VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
AUX2	CBL/SAT group, VCR/PVR group, BD/DVD group, Audio group
CD	Audio group
TV AUDIO	TV group

1. **Press and hold down the input source button that you want to register the preset code to and SETUP until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators are flashing green.**

2. **Enter the preset number (5 digits) listed for the device in the Preset Code Table using the number buttons (0 – 9) on the remote control.**

- Some manufacturers use more than one type of preset code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.

NOTE

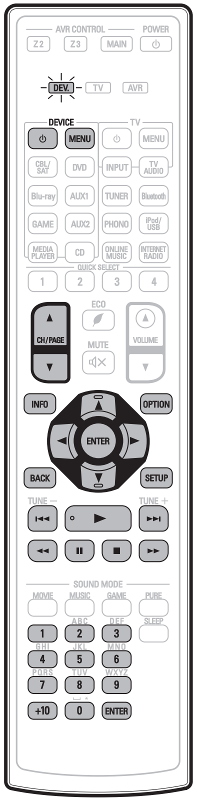
- Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.

Operating devices

To operate an external device, press the input source button registered with the preset code, followed by one of the buttons in the following tables.

- The “DEV.” indicator lights when an external device is being operated.
- The “TV” indicator lights when the TV is being operated.
- To operate the menu of this unit, press MAIN before operating the unit. The “AVR” operation mode indicator lights when the unit is being operated.

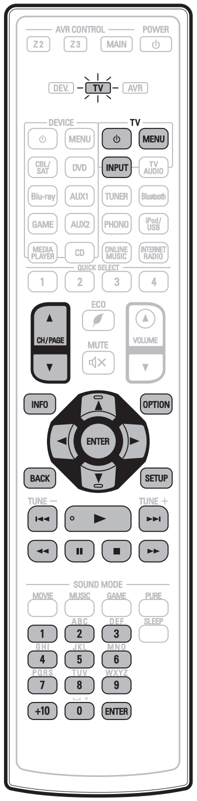
❑ CBL/SAT group (Set top box for satellite (SAT)/cable TV (CBL)/ Media player/IP TV) operation


AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
MENU
CBL/SAT
DVD
INPUT
TV AUDIO
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
SLEEP
+10
ENTER

Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	Menu
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
OPTION	Sub menu, Option
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER(Cursor)	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Home menu
⏮ ⏭	Skip chapter
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
0 – 9, +10	Channel selection
ENTER(Number)	3 digit entry

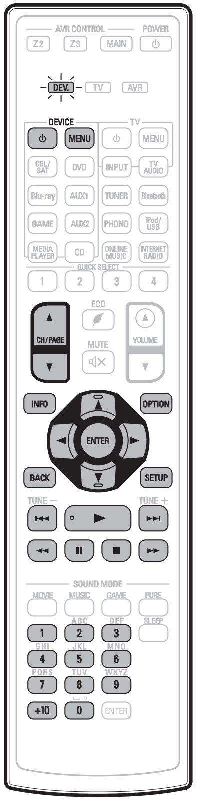
- Depending on the device, the power may not be turned off for the DEVICE ⏻ buttons.

❑ TV group
(TV) operation


AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
MENU
INPUT
TV AUDIO
CBL/SAT
DVD
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
SLEEP
+10
0
ENTER

Operation buttons	Function
TV ⏻	TV power on/off
TV INPUT	Switch TV input
TV MENU	TV menu
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
OPTION	Sub menu, Option
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER(Cursor)	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
⏮ ⏭	Skip chapter
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
0 – 9, +10	Channel selection
ENTER(Number)	3 digit entry

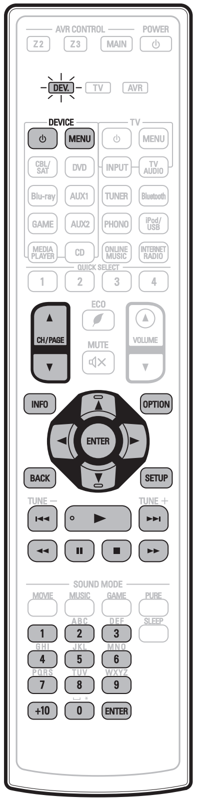
❑ VCR/PVR group
(Video cassette recorder (VCR)/personal video recorder (PVR)) operation


AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
MENU
INPUT
TV AUDIO
CBL/SAT
DVD
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
SLEEP
+10
0
ENTER

Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	Menu
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
OPTION	Sub menu, Option
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
⏮ ⏭	Skip chapter
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection

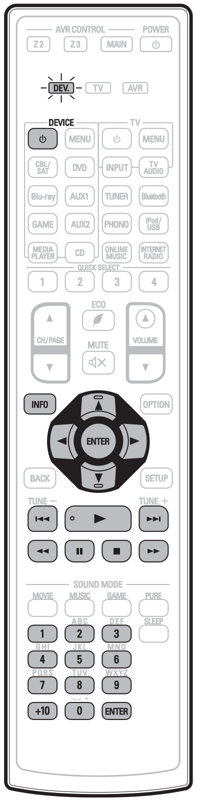
- Depending on the device, the power may not be turned off for the DEVICE ⏻ and TV ⏻ buttons.
- TV ⏻ and TV INPUT buttons can be operated at any time without pressing the TV button.

❏ BD/DVD group (Blu-ray Disc player/HD-DVD player/DVD player/DVD recorder) operation


AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
MENU
CBL/SAT
DVD
INPUT
TV AUDIO
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
1
2
3
4
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
SLEEP
+10
0
ENTER

Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	(Popup) Menu
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
OPTION	Top menu
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
⏮ ⏭	Skip chapter
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection

❏ Audio group (CD player/CD recorder) operation


AVR CONTROL
POWER
Z2
Z3
MAIN
DEV.
TV
AVR
DEVICE
MENU
CBL/SAT
DVD
INPUT
TV AUDIO
Blu-ray
AUX1
TUNER
Bluetooth
GAME
AUX2
PHONO
iPod/USB
MEDIA PLAYER
CD
ONLINE MUSIC
INTERNET RADIO
QUICK SELECT
1
2
3
4
ECO
CH/PAGE
MUTE
VOLUME
INFO
OPTION
ENTER
BACK
SETUP
TUNE –
TUNE +
SOUND MODE
MOVIE
MUSIC
GAME
PURE
SLEEP
+10
0
ENTER

Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
INFO	Information
△ ▽ ◁ ▷	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
⏮ ⏭	Skip track
▶	Playback
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
❚❚	Pause
■	Stop
0 – 9, +10	Track selection

- Depending on the device, the DEVICE ⏻ button only performs the power-on operation. (Depending on the device, some Denon models can only be operated with the power turned on.)

Initializing registered preset codes

1. **Press and hold down MAIN and OPTION until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators on the remote are flashing green, then release.**

Specifying the operating zone with the remote control

To prevent accidental misuse, you can set the zone for which the remote control unit is used.

1. **Press and hold down either MAIN, Z2 or Z3 and SETUP at the same time until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators flash green.**

MAIN:	When only using MAIN ZONE
Z2:	When using MAIN ZONE and ZONE2
Z3 (Default)**:**	When using MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3

Resetting the remote control unit

All the settings are restored to their defaults.

1. **Press and hold down DEVICE MENU until the DEV, TV and AVR indicators on the remote are flashing green, then release.**

2. **Press 9, 8 and 1, in that order.**

   The DEV, TV and AVR indicators flash twice.

   All the settings are restored to their defaults.

■ Contents

Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake 280
I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on 280
I want to have the subwoofer always output audio 280
I want to make human voices in the movies clearer 280
I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level 280
I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies 280
I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one 281
I want to combine a desired video with the current music 281
I want to skip unused input sources 281
I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc. 281
I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I’m playing a game on my game console 281
I want to operate this unit using the TV remote control 281

Troubleshooting

Power does not turn on / Power is turned off 283
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit 284
Display on this unit shows nothing 284
No sound comes out 285
Desired sound does not come out 286
Sound is interrupted or noise occurs 288
No video is shown on the TV 289
The menu screen is not displayed on the TV 291
iPod cannot be played back 292
USB memory devices cannot be played back 293
File names on the iPod/USB memory device are not displayed properly 294
Bluetooth cannot be played back 294
The Internet radio cannot be played back 295
Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back 296
Various online services cannot be played 296
The HDMI control function does not work 297
Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network 298
When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly 299

Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake

- Set the volume upper limit for “Volume Limit” in the menu beforehand. This prevents children or others from increasing the volume too much by mistake. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (☞ p. 193), “Volume Limit” (☞ p. 262))

I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on

- By default, the volume setting when power was previously set to standby on this unit is applied at next power on with no change. To use a fixed volume level, set the volume level at power on for “Power On Volume” in the menu. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (☞ p. 193), “Power On Volume” (☞ p. 262))

I want to have the subwoofer always output audio

- Depending on the input signals and sound mode, the subwoofer may not output audio. When “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”, you can have the subwoofer always output audio. (☞ p. 245)

I want to make human voices in the movies clearer

- Use “Dialog Level Adjust” in the menu to adjust the level. (☞ p. 185)

I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level

- Set “Dynamic EQ” in the menu to “On”. This setting corrects the frequency characteristics to allow you to enjoy clear sound without the bass being lost even during playback at a lower volume level. (☞ p. 195)

I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies

- Set “Dynamic Volume” in the menu. Volume level changes (between quiet scenes and loud scenes) in TV shows or movies are automatically adjusted to your desired level. (☞ p. 196)

I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one.

- Perform Audyssey® Setup. This automatically makes the optimized speaker settings for the new listening environment. (☞ p. 220)

I want to combine a desired video with the current music

- Set “Video Select” in the option menu to “On”. You can combine the current music with your desired video source from a Set-top Box or DVD, etc. while listening to music from the Tuner, CD, Phono, Internet radio, USB or Bluetooth. (☞ p. 143)

I want to skip unused input sources

- Set unused input sources for “Hide Sources” in the menu. This allows you to skip unused input sources when turning the SOURCE SELECT knob on this unit. (☞ p. 218)

I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.

- Set “All Zone Stereo” in the option menu to “Start”. This allows you to simultaneously play back the music that is being played back in MAIN ZONE in ZONE2/ZONE3. (☞ p. 145)

I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I’m playing a game on my game console

- When the video is delayed against button operations with the controller on the game console, set “Video Mode” in the menu to “Game”. (☞ p. 209)

I want to operate this unit using the TV remote control

- Select “AV Receiver” in a TV menu such as “Input”∗ or “Operate Connected HDMI Device”∗. The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV. This Smart Menu can be operated using the remote control of your TV.

∗ The selection method differs depending on your TV. See the owner's manual of your TV for details.

Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. **Are the connections correct?**
2. **Is the set being operated as described in the owner’s manual?**
3. **Are the other devices operating properly?**

If this unit does not operate properly, check the corresponding symptoms in this section.

If the symptoms do not match any of those described here, consult your dealer as it could be due to a fault in this unit. In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact the store where you purchased this unit.

■ Power does not turn on / Power is turned off

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Power does not turn on.	• Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet.	88
Power automatically turns off.	• The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again.	164
	• “Auto Standby” is set. “Auto Standby” is triggered when there is no operation for a set amount of time. To disable “Auto Standby”, set “Auto Standby” on the menu to “Off”.	260
Power turns off and the power indicator flashes in red approx. every 2 seconds.	• The protection circuit has been activated due to a rise in temperature within this unit. Turn the power off, wait about an hour until this unit cools down sufficiently, and then turn the power on again.	329
	• Please re-install this unit in a place having good ventilation.	—
Power turns off and the power indicator flashes in red approx. every 0.5 seconds.	• Check the speaker connections. The protection circuit may have been activated because speaker cable core wires came in contact with each other or a core wire was disconnected from the connector and came in contact with the rear panel of this unit. After unplugging the power cord, take corrective action such as firmly re-twisting the core wire or taking care of the connector, and then reconnect the wire.	42
	• Turn down the volume and turn on the power again.	90
	• This unit’s amplifier circuit has failed. Unplug the power cord and contact our customer service center.	—
The power to this unit does not turn off when you press the Power operation button. “ZONE2 On” or “ZONE3 On” appears on the display.	• Power in either ZONE2 or ZONE3 is on. To turn off the power of the device (standby), press either the ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF button on the main unit or press the POWER ⏻ button after pressing the Z2 or Z3 button on the remote control unit.	—

■ Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit.	• Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries.	10
	• Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°.	10
	• Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit.	—
	• Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the ⊕ and ⊖ marks.	10
	• The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light.	—
	• The operation target zone does not correspond to the zone setting specified on the remote control unit. Press MAIN, Z2 or Z3 to select the zone to operate.	181
	• The remote control unit operating mode is used to operate other devices. Press MAIN to set the operating mode to AVR.	275
	• When using a 3D video device, the remote control unit of this unit may not function due to effects of infrared communications between units (such as TV and glasses for 3D viewing). In this case, adjust the direction of units with the 3D communications function and their distance to ensure they do not affect operations from the remote control unit of this unit.	—

■ Display on this unit shows nothing

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Display is off.	• Set "Dimmer" on the menu to something other than "Off".	264
	• When the sound mode is set to "Pure Direct", the display is off.	148

No sound comes out

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
No sound comes out of speakers.	• Check the connections for all devices.	32
	• Insert connection cables all the way in.	—
	• Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.	—
	• Check cables for damage.	—
	• Check that speaker cables are properly connected. Check that cable core wires come in contact with the metal part on speaker terminals.	42
	• Securely tighten the speaker terminals. Check speaker terminals for looseness.	42
	• Check that a proper input source is selected.	90
	• Adjust the volume.	91
	• Cancel the mute mode.	91
	• Check the digital audio input connector setting.	215
	• Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, the digital audio output is set to off by default.	—
	• When a headphone is plugged into the PHONES jack on the main unit, sound is not output from the speaker terminal and PRE OUT connector.	—
No sound comes out when using the DVI-D connection.	• When this unit is connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector, no sound is output. Make a separate audio connection.	—

■ Desired sound does not come out

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The volume does not increase.	• The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using “Limit” on the menu.	193
	• Appropriate volume correction processing is performed according to the input audio format and settings, so the volume may not reach the upper limit.	—
No sound comes out with the HDMI connection.	• Check the connection of the HDMI connectors.	71
	• When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set “HDMI Audio Out” on the menu to “AVR”. To output from the TV, set “TV”.	204
	• When using the HDMI control function, check that the audio output is set to the AV amplifier on the TV.	161
No sound comes out of a specific speaker.	• Check that speaker cables are properly connected.	—
	• Check that a selection other than “None” is set for the “Speaker Config.” setting in menu.	237
	• Check the “Assign Mode” setting in the menu.	231
	• When the sound mode is “Stereo” and “Virtual”, audio is only output from the front speakers and subwoofer.	—
No sound is produced from subwoofer.	• Check the subwoofer connections.	—
	• Turn on the subwoofer’s power.	—
	• Set “Speaker Config.” - “Subwoofer” in the menu to “1 spkr” or “2 spkrs”.	237
	• When “Speaker Config.” - “Front” in the menu is set to “Large”, depending on the input signal and the sound mode, no sound may be output from the subwoofer.	237
	• When no subwoofer audio signal (LFE) is included in the input signals, no sound may be output from the subwoofer.	245
	• You can make the subwoofer always output sound by setting the “Subwoofer Mode” to “LFE+Main”.	245
DTS sound is not output.	• Check that the digital audio output setting on the connected device is set to “DTS”.	—
	• Set “Decode Mode” on the menu to “Auto” or “DTS”.	219
Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.	• Make HDMI connections.	75
	• Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, “PCM” is set by default.	—

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
DTS Neural:X mode cannot be selected.	- DTS Neural:X cannot be selected when using the headphones.	—
Dolby Surround mode cannot be selected.	- Dolby Surround cannot be selected when using the headphones.	—
Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected.	- These cannot be selected when you have not performed Audyssey® Setup.	220
	- Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.	148
	- These cannot be selected when using the headphones.	—
Audyssey DSX® cannot be selected.	- It can be selected when using the front height or front wide speakers.	239
	- It can be selected when using the center speaker.	237
	- Switch the sound mode to Dolby sound mode or DTS sound mode.	147
	- This cannot be selected when using the headphones.	—
	- This cannot be set when the input signal is a 2-channel source.	—
“Restorer” cannot be selected.	- Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, “Restorer” cannot be used.	192
	- Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.	148
No audio is output from PRE OUT or speakers for ZONE2/ZONE3.	- In ZONE2/ZONE3, the audio can be played back when signals input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) are in 2ch PCM format.	—
	- In ZONE2, the audio can be played back when signals input from the HDMI connector are in 2ch PCM format. To play back the audio in ZONE2 irrespective of the input signal format, set “HDMI Audio” in the menu to “PCM”. Depending on the played back device, the audio may not be played back even with this setting. In that case, set the audio format to “PCM (2ch)” on the played back device.	262
	- When listening to audio from a Bluetooth device in ZONE2/ZONE3, remove any obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit and use it within a range of about 32.8 ft/10 m.	—

■ Sound is interrupted or noise occurs

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
During playback from the Internet radio or USB memory device, sound is occasionally interrupted.	• When the transfer speed of the USB memory device is slow, sound may occasionally be interrupted.	–
	• The network communication speed is slow or the radio station is busy.	–
When making a call on iPhone, noise occurs in audio output on this unit.	• When making a call, keep a distance of 0.7 ft/20 cm or longer between iPhone and this unit.	–
Noise often occurs in FM/AM broadcasting.	• Change the antenna orientation or position.	82
	• Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit.	–
	• Use an outdoor antenna.	82
	• Separate the antenna from other connection cables.	82
The sounds appear to be distorted.	• Lower the volume.	91
	• Set “Off” to the ECO Mode. When “On” or “Auto” is in the ECO Mode, the audio may by distorted when the playback volume is high.	258
Sound cuts out when using Wi-Fi connection.	• If nearby devices cause playback to cut out due to electronic interference, switch to a wired LAN connection.	84
	• Particularly when you play back large music files, depending on your wireless LAN environment, the playback sound may be interrupted. In this case, make the wired LAN connection.	250

■ No video is shown on the TV

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
No picture appears.	• Check the connections for all devices.	71
	• Insert connection cables all the way in.	—
	• Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.	—
	• Check cables for damage.	—
	• Match the input settings to the input connector of the TV connected to this unit.	215
	• Check that the proper input source is selected.	90
	• Check the video input connector setting.	215
	• Check that the resolution of the player corresponds to that of the TV.	268
	• Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly.	303
	• To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.	—
	• The HDMI signal cannot be converted to an analog signal. Use analog connections.	304
	• Use an “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet” or “High speed cable” that comes with the HDMI logo if you wish to playback 4K (60/50 Hz) video.	—
No video is shown on the TV with the DVI-D connection.	• With the DVI-D connection, on some device combinations, devices may not function properly due to the copy guard copyright protection (HDCP).	303
No video from an input source such as a game console is shown on the TV.	• When special video signals are input from a game console, etc., the video conversion function may not function. Connect the input connector to the monitor output connector of the same type.	—
While the menu is being displayed, no video is shown on the TV.	• The video being played will not appear in the background of the menu when the menu is operated during playback of the following video signals. - Some images of 3D video contents - Computer resolution images (example: VGA) - Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3 - 4K video	—

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
When using HDMI ZONE2, the video output in MAIN ZONE is interrupted.	• When ZONE2 is operated with the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, video in MAIN ZONE may be interrupted.	—

■ The menu screen is not displayed on the TV

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The menu screen or status information screen is not displayed on the TV.	• The menu screen is only displayed on this unit and a TV connected with an HDMI cable. If this unit is connected to a TV using a different video output connector, operate while watching the display on this unit.	—
	• The status information will not appear on the TV when the following video signals are being played. - Some images of 3D video content - Computer resolution images (example: VGA) - Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3	269
	• When a 2D video is converted to a 3D video on the TV, the menu screen or status information screen is not displayed properly.	269
	• In the pure direct playback mode, the menu screen or status information is not displayed. Switch to a sound mode other than the pure direct mode.	147
	• Set the “TV Format” setting in the menu to a selection that is appropriate for the TV.	214

iPod cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
iPod cannot be connected.	- When using iPod by connecting it to the USB port, some iPod variations are not supported.	80
	- When iPod is connected by using a USB cable other than the genuine cable, iPod may not be recognized. Use a genuine USB cable.	—
The AirPlay icon ▲ is not displayed on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.	- This unit and PC / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect it to the same LAN as this unit.	84
	- The firmware on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is not compatible with AirPlay. Update the firmware to the latest version.	—
Audio is not output.	- The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is set to the minimum level. The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is linked with the volume on this unit. Set a proper volume level.	—
	- The AirPlay playback is not performed, or this unit is not selected. Click the AirPlay icon ▲ on the iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad screen and select this unit.	132
Audio is interrupted during the AirPlay playback on iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.	- Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay.	—
	- Some external factors may be affecting the wireless connection. Modify the network environment by taking measures such as shortening the distance from the wireless LAN access point.	—
iTunes cannot be played back through the remote control unit.	- Enable the “Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers” setting on iTunes. Then, you can perform playback, pause, and skip operations through the remote control unit.	—

■ USB memory devices cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
"No connection" is displayed.	• This unit cannot recognize the USB memory device. Disconnect and reconnect the USB memory device.	80
	• Mass storage class compatible USB memory devices are supported.	—
	• This unit does not support a connection through a USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port.	—
	• The USB memory device must be formatted to FAT16 or FAT32.	—
	• Not all USB memory devices are guaranteed to work. Some USB memory devices are not recognized. When using a type of portable hard disc drive compatible with the USB connection that requires power from an AC adapter, use the AC adapter that came with the drive.	—
Files on the USB memory device are not displayed.	• Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed.	97
	• This unit is able to display files in a maximum of eight folder layers. A maximum of 5000 files (folders) can also be displayed for each layer. Modify the folder structure of the USB memory device.	—
	• When multiple partitions exist on the USB memory device, only files on the first partition are displayed.	—
Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.	• Files are created in a format that is not supported by this unit. Check the formats supported by this unit.	306
	• You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.	—
	• Playback may not be possible if the album art file size exceeds 2 MB.	—

■ File names on the iPod/USB memory device are not displayed properly

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The file names are not displayed properly ("...", etc.).	• Characters that cannot be displayed have been used. On this unit, characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with a ". (period)".	—

■ Bluetooth cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Bluetooth devices cannot be connected to this unit.	• The Bluetooth function in the Bluetooth device has not been enabled. See the Owner's Manual of the Bluetooth device to enable the Bluetooth function.	—
	• Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.	—
	• The Bluetooth device cannot connect with this unit if it is not compatible with the A2DP profile.	—
	• Turn the power of the Bluetooth device off and on again, and then try again.	—
The sound is cut off.	• Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.	—
	• Remove obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit.	—
	• To prevent electromagnetic interference, locate this unit away from microwave ovens, wireless LAN devices and other Bluetooth devices.	—
	• Reconnect the Bluetooth device.	—

■ The Internet radio cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
A list of broadcasting stations is not displayed.	• The LAN cable is not properly connected, or the network is disconnected. Check the connection status.	84
	• Perform the network diagnostic mode.	—
Internet Radio cannot be played.	• The selected radio station is broadcasting in a format that is not supported by this unit. Formats that can be played back in this unit are MP3, WMA and AAC.	309
	• The firewall function is enabled on the router. Check the firewall setting.	—
	• The IP address is not properly set.	253
	• Check the power of the router is on.	—
	• To obtain the IP address automatically, enable the DHCP server function on the router. Also, set the DHCP setting to “On” on this unit.	253
	• To obtain the IP address manually, set the IP address and proxy on this unit.	253
	• Some radio stations broadcast silently during some time period. In this case, no audio is output. Wait for a while and select the same radio station, or select another radio station.	114
Cannot connect to favorite radio stations.	• Radio station is not currently in service. Register radio stations in service.	—
For some radio stations, “Connection down” is displayed and station cannot be connected to.	• The selected radio station is not in service. Select a radio station in service.	—

■ Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Files stored on a computer cannot be played.	• Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format.	308
	• Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.	—
	• The set's USB port cannot be used for connection to a computer.	—
	• Media sharing settings are not correct. Change media sharing settings so that the unit can access the folders on your computer.	118
Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server.	• The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings.	—
	• Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power.	—
	• Server is not running. Launch the server.	—
	• Set's IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address.	249
Music files on PC cannot be played back.	• Even if PC is connected to the USB port on this unit, music files on it cannot be played back. Connect PC to this unit through the network.	84
Files on PC or NAS are not displayed.	• Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed.	308
Music stored on a NAS cannot be played.	• If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable the DLNA server function in the NAS setting.	—
	• If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard, play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder.	118
	• If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection target.	—

■ Various online services cannot be played

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Various online services cannot be played.	• The online service may have been discontinued.	—

■ The HDMI control function does not work

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The HDMI control function does not work.	• Check that “HDMI Control” in the menu is set to “On”.	205
	• You cannot operate devices that are not compatible with the HDMI control function. In addition, depending on the connected device or the settings, the HDMI control function may not work. In this case, operate the external device directly.	161
	• Check that the HDMI control function setting is enabled on all devices connected to this unit.	161
	• When you make connection related changes such as connecting an additional HDMI device, the link operation settings may be initialized. Turn off this unit and devices connected via HDMI, and turn them on again.	161
	• The HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is not compatible with the HDMI control function. Use the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector to connect to the TV.	71

■ Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network

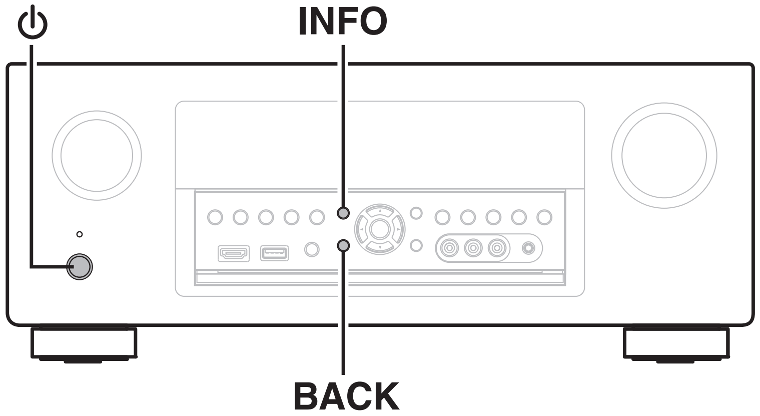
Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Cannot connect to the network.	• The network name (SSID), password and encryption setting have not been set up correctly. Configure the network settings according to the setting details of this unit.	252
	• Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN access point and remove any obstructions to improve access first before re-connecting again. Place the unit away from microwave ovens and other network access points.	—
	• Configure the access point channel settings away from channels that are being used by other networks.	—
	• This unit is not compatible with WEP (TSN).	—
Cannot connect to WPS.	• Check that the WPS mode of the router is operating.	—
	• Press the WPS button on the router and then press the “Connect” button displayed on the TV within 2 minutes.	—
	• A router/settings that are compatible with WPS 2.0 standards are required. Set the encryption time to “None”, “WPA-PSK (AES)” or WPA2-PSK (AES).	252
	• If the router encryption method is WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-TKIP, you cannot connect by using the WPS button. In this case, use the “Scan Networks” or “Manual” method to connect.	—
Cannot connect to the network using iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.	• Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad firmware to the latest version.	—
	• When using a USB cable to configure the settings, the iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 5 or later. When configuring the settings via a wireless connection, iOS 7 or later needs to be supported.	—

■ When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
When using MAIN ZONE, video output is interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.	• With the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, when you operate MAIN ZONE, video may be interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.	—
When using HDMI ZONE2, no video or audio is output from the TV in ZONE2.	• Check that the power is on for ZONE2.	176
	• Check the input source for ZONE2.	176
	• The AUX1-HDMI connector on the front panel does not support the HDMI ZONE2 function.	—
	• In ZONE2, playback is only possible when the input signals are HDMI signals.	—
	• When the TV does not support the input audio format, audio is not output. Set the audio format to “PCM” on the playback device. Alternatively, set “ZONE2 Setup” - “HDMI Audio” in the menu to “PCM”.	262
	• When the TV is not compatible with the resolution of the input video, no video is output. Set the output resolution on the playback device to a resolution that is compatible with the TV.	—
When using HDMI ZONE2, MAIN ZONE audio is played back as PCM.	• When the same input source is selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, the audio format is limited according to the specifications of the TV in ZONE2.	—

Resetting factory settings

Perform this procedure if the display is abnormal or if operations cannot be performed.
Various settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.



1 **Turn off the power using ⏻.**

2 **Press ⏻ while simultaneously pressing INFO and BACK.**

3 **Remove your fingers from the two buttons when "Initialized" appears on the display.**

- Before restoring the default setting, the "Save" function of the web control function can be used to store the various settings of the unit. (☞ p. 170)
  However, account information for network content and information on registered favorites cannot be stored.
- When deleting a Pandora account, carry out steps 1 to 3 after signing out in the Pandora service. (☞ p. 127)

About HDMI

HDMI is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier.

With the HDMI connection, high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Blu-ray Disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio) can be transmitted, which is not possible with the analog video transmission.

Furthermore, in the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable, while in conventional connections it is necessary to provide audio and video cables separately for connection between devices. This allows you to simplify the wiring configuration that tends to be quite complex in a home theater system.

This unit supports the following HDMI functions.

- **Deep Color**

  An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB or YCbCr, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.

  Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

- **“x.v.Color”**

  This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors.

  “x.v.Color” is trademark of Sony Corporation.

- **3D**

  This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI. To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

- **4K**

  This unit supports input and output of 4K (3840 x 2160 pixels) video signals of HDMI.

- **Content Type**

  It automatically makes settings suitable for the video output type (content information).

- **Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color**

  The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

- **sYCC601 color**

  Each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

- **Auto Lip Sync**
  This function can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.
  Use a TV that is compatible with the Auto Lip Sync function.

- **HDMI Pass Through**
  Even when the power to this unit is set to standby, signals input from the HDMI input connector are output to a TV or other device that is connected to the HDMI output connector.

- **HDMI Control**
  If you connect the unit and an HDMI control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.
  - Power off link
    This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.
  - Audio output destination switching
    From the TV, you can switch whether to output audio from the TV or the AV amplifier.
  - Volume adjustment
    You can adjust this unit’s volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.
  - Input source switching
    You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.
    When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.

- **ARC (Audio Return Channel)**
  This function transmits audio signals from the TV to this unit through the HDMI cable and plays back the audio from the TV on this unit based on the HDMI control function.
  If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.
  In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.

Supported audio formats

2-channel Linear PCM	2-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Multi-channel Linear PCM	7.1-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Bitstream	Dolby Digital / DTS / Dolby Atmos / Dolby TrueHD / Dolby Digital Plus / DTS:X / DTS-HD Master Audio / DTS-HD High Resolution Audio / DTS Express
DSD	2-channel – 5.1-channel, 2.8224 MHz

Supported video signals

- 480i
- 576i
- 720p 60/50Hz
- 1080p 60/50/24Hz
- 480p
- 576p
- 1080i 60/50Hz
- 4K 60/50/30/25/24 Hz

Copyright protection system

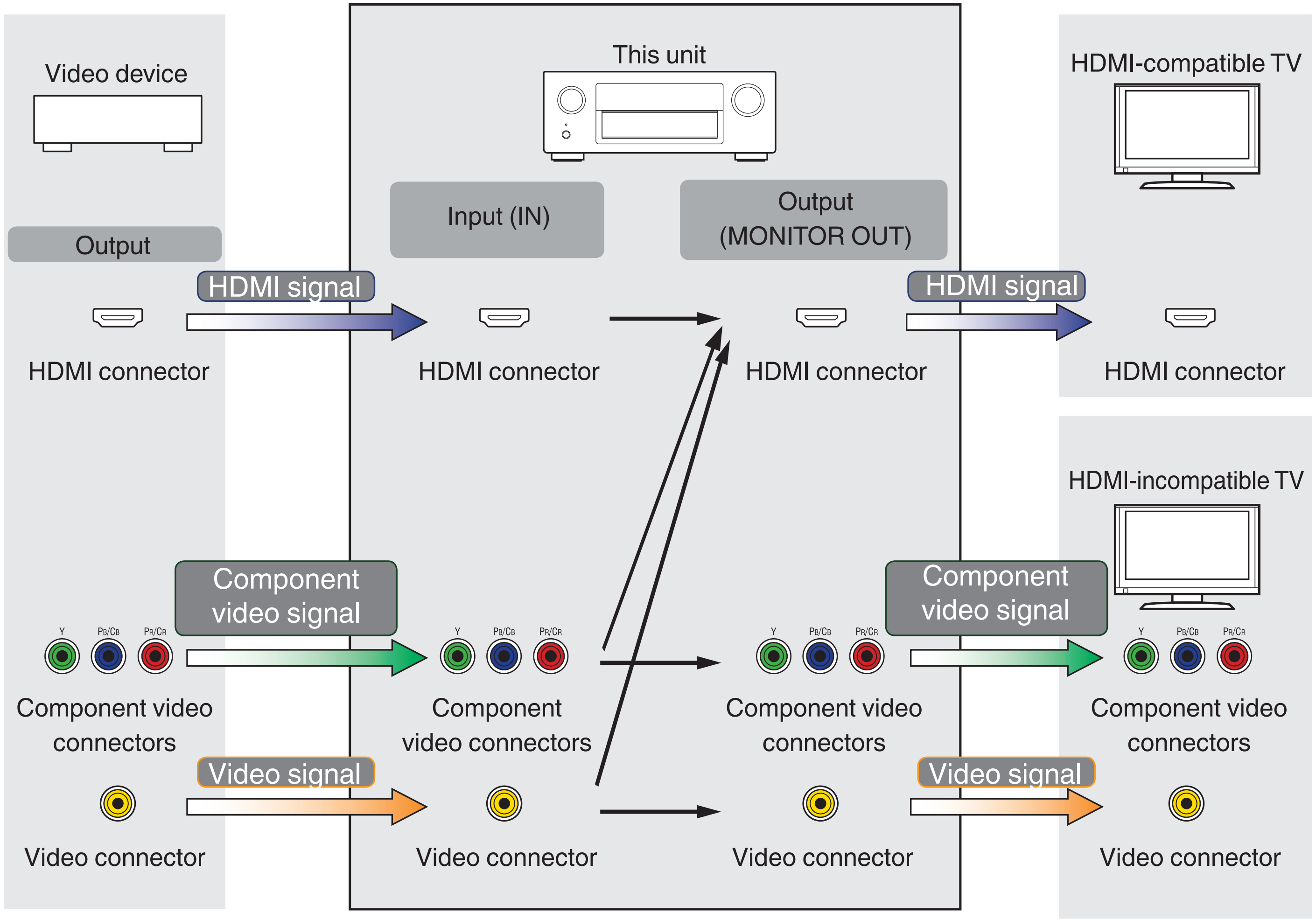
In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD video or DVD video via HDMI connection, both this unit and the TV or player must to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP.

- If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner’s manual of your television or player for more information.

- When connecting this unit to a device that is compatible with the Deep Color, 4K and ARC functions, use a “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet” that bears the HDMI logo.

Video conversion function

This unit automatically converts the input video signals as shown in the diagram before outputting them to the TV.



Video device
Output
HDMI signal
HDMI connector
Component video signal
Y Pb/Cb Pr/Cr
Component video connectors
Video signal
Video connector
This unit
Input (IN)
HDMI connector
Component video connectors
Video connector
Output (MONITOR OUT)
HDMI connector
Component video connectors
Video connector
HDMI signal
Component video signal
Video signal
HDMI-compatible TV
HDMI connector
HDMI-incompatible TV
Component video connectors
Video connector

- The main zone video conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.

This unit can convert the input video signals to the resolution that is set for “Resolution” in the menu before outputting them to the TV. (☞ p. 211)

Output signal / Input signal		HDMI							
		480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	1080p	1080p 24Hz	4K 30/25/24Hz	4K 60/50Hz
HDMI	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	720p			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080i			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p 24Hz					✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p					✓	✓	✓	✓
	4K 30/25/24Hz							✓	
	4K 60/50Hz								✓ *
Component Video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	720p			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080i			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p					✓	✓	✓	✓
Video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

* The HDMI connector on the front panel supports YCbCr420 format only.

Playing back a USB memory devices

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.

■ Compatible formats

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA[1]	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC[1]	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC[2]	32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8 MHz	–	.dsf/ .dff
AIFF	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.aif/ .aiff

[1] Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit. Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer’s settings.

[2] Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings. Inc.]
Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the “License”); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at
http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

- In ZONE2, it is not possible to play the DSD signal.

Maximum number of playable files and folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

Item / Media	USB memory device
Memory capacity	FAT16 : 2 GB, FAT32 : 2 TB
Number of folder directory levels *1	8 levels
Number of folders	500
Number of files*2	5000

*1 The limited number includes the root folder.

*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

Playing back a Bluetooth device

This unit supports the following Bluetooth profile.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile):
  When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, monaural and stereo sound data can be streamed at a high quality.
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile):
  When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, the Bluetooth device can be operated from this unit.

About Bluetooth communications

Radio waves broadcast from this unit may interfere with the operation of medical devices. Make sure you turn off the power of this unit and Bluetooth device in the following locations as radio wave interference may cause malfunctions.

- Hospitals, trains, aircraft, petrol kiosks and places where flammable gases are generated
- Near automatic doors and fire alarms

Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.

■ Specifications of supported files

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a/.mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC*2	32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8 MHz	–	.dsf/.dff
AIFF	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.aif/.aiff

*1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit. Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

*2 Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings. Inc.]
Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at
http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

✎

- In ZONE2, it is not possible to play the DSD signal.

Playing back Internet Radio

■ Playable broadcast station specifications

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4

Personal memory plus function

The most recently used settings (input mode, HDMI output mode, sound mode, tone control, channel level, MultEQ® XT32, Dynamic EQ, Dynamic Volume, Restorer and audio delay, etc.) are saved for each input source.

- “Surround Parameter” settings are stored for each sound mode.

Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.

Sound modes and channel output

○ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
◎ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of “Speaker Config.”. (☞ p. 237)

Sound mode	Channel output													
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Wide L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Top Rear L/R	Rear Height L/R	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Back Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Subwoofer
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel)	○													◎*7
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel)	○	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
DSD Direct (2-channel)	○													◎*7
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)	○	◎	◎											◎
Stereo	○													◎
Multi Ch In	○	◎	◎	◎*3										◎
Dolby Surround *1	○	◎	◎	◎*4		◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS Neural:X *2	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Audyssey DSX®	○	◎	◎		◎*6	◎*6								◎
Dolby Digital	○	◎	◎											◎
Dolby Digital Plus	○	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3								◎
Dolby TrueHD	○	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3								◎
Dolby Atmos	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS Surround	○	◎	◎	◎										◎
DTS 96/24	○	◎	◎	◎										◎
DTS-HD	○	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3								◎
DTS Express	○	◎	◎	◎										◎
DTS:X	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Multi Ch Stereo	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎
Rock Arena	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎
Jazz Club	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎
Mono Movie	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎
Video Game	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎
Matrix	○	◎	◎	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎*5	◎
Virtual	○													◎

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Sound mode	Channel output														
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Wide L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Top Rear L/R	Rear Height L/R	Surround Height L/R	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Back Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Subwoofer
Auro-3D	○	◎	◎			◎				◎*8	◎				◎
Auro-2D Surround	○	◎	◎	◎											◎

*1 The applicable sound mode includes “Dolby Surround” and sound modes that have “+Dolby Surround” in the sound mode name.
*2 The applicable sound mode includes “DTS Neural:X” and sound modes that have “+Neural:X” in the sound mode name.
*3 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
*4 Audio is not output when “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” in the menu is set to “1 spkr”. (☞ p. 238)
*5 Audio is output from the speakers specified in the “Surround Parameter” – “Speaker Select” settings. (☞ p. 191)
*6 Audio is output from the speakers specified in the “Audyssey DSX®” settings. (☞ p. 197)
*7 Audio is output when “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”. (☞ p. 245)
*8 For the best Auro-3D experience Surround Height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of Surround Height speakers.

Sound modes and surround parameters

Sound mode	Surround Parameter										
	Dialog Level Adjust	Subwoofer Level Adjust	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management *1	Dynamic Compression *2	Dialog Control *3	Low Frequency Effects *4	Delay Time	Effect Level	Room Size	Speaker Select
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *5		○*6		○	○						
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *5	○	○		○	○		○				
DSD Direct (2-channel)		○*6									
DSD Direct (Multi-channel) *5	○	○					○				
Stereo		○		○	○						
Multi Ch In	○	○	○				○				
Dolby Surround	○	○	○	○	○						
DTS Neural:X	○	○	○		○						
Audyssey DSX®	○	○	○	○	○		○				
Dolby Digital	○	○	○	○	○		○				
Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○	○	○		○				
Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○	○	○		○				
Dolby Atmos	○	○	○	○	○		○				
DTS Surround	○	○	○		○		○				
DTS 96/24	○	○	○				○				
DTS-HD	○	○	○				○				
DTS Express	○	○	○				○				
DTS:X	○	○	○			○	○				
Multi Ch Stereo	○	○		○	○		○				○
Rock Arena	○	○		○	○		○		○	○	○
Jazz Club	○	○		○	○		○		○	○	○
Mono Movie	○	○		○	○		○		○	○	○
Video Game	○	○		○	○		○		○	○	○
Matrix	○	○		○	○		○	○			○
Virtual	○	○		○	○		○				

*1 - *6 : “Sound modes and surround parameters” (☞ p. 315)

Sound mode	Surround Parameter					Tone *7	Audyssey					Restorer *10
	Center Spread	Center Gain	DTS Neural:X	Auro-Matic 3D Preset	Auro-Matic 3D Strength		MultEQ® XT32 *8	Dynamic EQ *9	Dynamic Volume *9	Audyssey LFC™ *9	Audyssey DSX®	
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *5												
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *5												
DSD Direct (2-channel)												
DSD Direct (Multi-channel) *5												
Stereo						○	○	○	○	○		○
Multi Ch In						○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Surround	○					○	○	○	○	○		○
DTS Neural:X						○	○	○	○	○		○
Audyssey DSX®						○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Digital						○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Digital Plus						○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby TrueHD						○	○	○	○	○	○	
Dolby Atmos						○	○	○	○	○		
DTS Surround						○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS 96/24						○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS-HD						○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS Express						○	○	○	○	○	○	
DTS:X			○			○	○	○	○	○		
Multi Ch Stereo						○	○	○	○	○		○
Rock Arena						○	○	○	○	○		○
Jazz Club						○	○	○	○	○		○
Mono Movie						○	○	○	○	○		○
Video Game						○	○	○	○	○		○
Matrix						○	○	○	○	○		○
Virtual						○	○	○	○	○		○

*5, *7 - *10: “Sound modes and surround parameters” (☞ p. 315)

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Sound mode	Surround Parameter										
	Dialog Level Adjust	Subwoofer Level Adjust	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management *1	Dynamic Compression *2	Dialog Control *3	Low Frequency Effects *4	Delay Time	Effect Level	Room Size	Speaker Select
Auro-3D	○	○	○				○				
Auro-2D Surround	○	○	○				○				

Sound mode	Surround Parameter					Tone *7	Audyssey					Restorer *10
	Center Spread	Center Gain	DTS Neural:X	Auro-Matic 3D Preset	Auro-Matic 3D Strength		MultEQ® XT32 *8	Dynamic EQ *9	Dynamic Volume *9	Audyssey LFC™ *9	Audyssey DSX®	
Auro-3D				○*11	○*11	○	○	○	○	○		○
Auro-2D Surround						○	○	○	○	○		○

*1 - *4, *7 - *11 : “Sound modes and surround parameters” (☞ p. 315)

＊1 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is played.
＊2 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or DTS signal is played.
＊3 This item can be selected when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.
＊4 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
＊5 During playback in Pure Direct mode, the surround parameters are the same as in Direct mode.
＊6 This setting is available when “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”. (☞ p. 245)
＊7 This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 195)
＊8 This item cannot be set when Audyssey® Setup (Speaker Calibration) has not been performed.
＊9 This item cannot be set when “MultEQ® XT32” in the menu is set to “Off”. (☞ p. 195)
＊10 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.
＊11 This can be set if the input signal does not contain an Auro-3D signal or if the input Auro-3D signal does not contain Front Height channels.

Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

● This indicates the default sound mode.
○ This indicates the selectable sound mode.

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal												
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Auro-3D
DTS Surround																		
DTS:X MSTR / DTS:X							●											
DTS-HD MSTR								●*3										○*12
DTS-HD HI RES								●*4										
DTS ES Dscrt6.1	*2									●								
DTS ES Mtrx6.1	*2										●							
DTS Surround										○	○	●						
DTS 96/24												●*5						
DTS Express									●									
DTS (-HD) + Neural:X								○	○	○	○	○						
DTS Neural:X		○		●	○													
Dolby Surround																		
Dolby Atmos *1													●					
Dolby TrueHD													○*6	○				○*13
Dolby Digital+													○*7		○			
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Dolby Surround														●	●	●		○*13
Dolby Digital																○		
Dolby Surround		○	●		○													

*1 – *7, *12, *13 : “Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes” (☞ p. 319)

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal												
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Auro-3D
Multi Ch In																		
Multi Ch In						●											●	○*14
Multi Ch In + Dolby Surround						○											○	
Multi Ch In 7.1	*2					○*9												
Multi Ch In + Neural:X						○											○	
Audyssey																		
Audyssey DSX®						○		○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○	○	
Direct																		
Direct		○*8	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
DSD Direct					○												○	
Pure Direct																		
Pure Direct		○	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
DSD Pure Direct					○												○	
Original sound mode																		
Multi Ch Stereo		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Rock Arena		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○	○	
Jazz Club		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○	○	
Mono Movie		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○	○	
Video Game		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○	○	
Matrix		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○	○	
Virtual		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○	○	
Stereo																		
Stereo		●	○	○	●	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	

*2, *8 – *10, *14 : "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 319)

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal												
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Auro-3D
Auro-3D																		
Auro-3D	*11	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*6*7	○	○	○	○	○
Auro-2D Surround	*11	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*6*7	○	○	○	○	○

*6, *7, *11 : “Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes” (☞ p. 319)

*1 This item can be selected when using any of the Surround Back, Front Wide, Front Height, Top Front, Top Middle, Top Rear, Rear Height, Front Dolby, Surround Dolby or Back Dolby speaker.

*2 This item can be selected when surround back speakers are used.

*3 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Master Audio.

*4 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Hi Resolution.

*5 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS 96/24.

*6 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD signal.

*7 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby Digital Plus signal.

*8 The default sound mode for the AirPlay playback is “Direct”.

*9 This item can be selected when the input signals contain surround back signals.

*10 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Digital Plus signal.

*11 This item cannot be selected if the sampling frequency of the input signal is 32 kHz.

*12 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains DTS-HD Master Audio.

*13 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Dolby TrueHD.

*14 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Multi Channel PCM.

Explanation of terms

Audyssey

Audyssey Dynamic EQ®

Dynamic EQ solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion (A-DSX)

Audyssey DSX® is a new surround enhancement technology that raises the surround effect and impression to realize a larger surround space by adding a new channel to the existing 5.1 channel system.

In research on human hearing characteristics, two points can be broadly cited as elements that enhance the surround effect. The most important point is the creation of horizontal spread (wide channel) at the front (forward) area in composing a realistic surround space. The next important point is the creation of vertical spread (height channel) in the front (forward) area using recognizable (audible) acoustic signals so as to create a surround space with depth.

Audyssey DSX® then creates a pair of Height channels to reproduce the next most important acoustical and perceptual cues. In addition, Audyssey DSX® does not simply add a channel but combines the existing front, surround and rear surround sound to develop a technology known as “Surround Envelopment Processing” which has been incorporated into Audyssey DSX® to further enhance the effect.

Audyssey Dynamic Volume®

Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment)

Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT32 calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

■ Auro-3D

Auro-3D®

The Auro-3D® technology suite is a groundbreaking new audio technology that combines height-based listening formats with powerful creative tools to deliver an unrivaled three-dimensional sound experience. Auro-3D® is the general format name for Sound in 3D and its related speaker lay-outs.

Auro-Matic®

Auro-Matic® up-mixing technology software is a unique creative tool that transforms legacy Mono, Stereo and Surround content into a natural 3D or 2D listening experience.

■ Dolby

Dolby Atmos

Introduced first in the cinema, Dolby Atmos brings a revolutionary sense of dimension and immersion to the Home Theater experience. Dolby Atmos is an adaptable and scalable object based format that reproduces audio as independent sounds (or objects) that can be accurately positioned and move dynamically throughout the 3 dimensional listening space during playback. A key ingredient of Dolby Atmos is the introduction of a height plane of sound above the listener.

Dolby Atmos Stream

Dolby Atmos content will be delivered to your Dolby Atmos enabled AV receiver via Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD on Blu-ray Disc, downloadable files and streaming media. A Dolby Atmos stream contains special metadata that describes the positioning of sounds within the room. This object audio data is decoded by a Dolby Atmos AV receiver and scaled for optimum playback through Home Theater speaker systems of every size and configuration.

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1-channels are played: 3 front channels (“FL”, “FR” and “C”), 2 surround channels (“SL” and “SR”) and the “LFE” channel for low frequency effects.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a “three-dimensional” feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved. This delivers a thrilling surround sound experience in the home.

Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

Dolby Surround

Dolby surround is a next generation surround technology that intelligently up mixes stereo; 5.1 and 7.1 content for playback through your surround speaker system. Dolby surround is compatible with traditional speaker layouts, as well as Dolby Atmos enabled playback systems that employ in-ceiling speakers or products with Dolby speaker technology.

Dolby Speaker Technology (Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers)

A convenient alternative to speakers built into the ceiling, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers employ the ceiling above you as a reflective surface for reproducing audio in the height plane above the listener. These speakers feature a unique upward firing driver and special signal processing. These features can be built into a conventional speaker or standalone speaker module. The features minimally impact the overall speaker footprint while providing an immersive listening experience during Dolby Atmos and Dolby surround playback.

Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution.

■ DTS

Dialog Control

Gives you control of the listening experience. You can lift the dialog out from the background sounds when clarity and intelligibility are desired. This requires that content has been authored to support Dialog Control.

DTS

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. DTS delivers a powerful and dynamic surround sound experience, and is found in the world’s finest movie theaters and screening rooms.

DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1-channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

DTS Digital Surround

DTS™ Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1-channels of digital discrete surround sound.

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel audio format that inserts a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

DTS Express

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1-channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

DTS-HD

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc.

This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

DTS:X

DTS:X produces a hemisphere of audio, where flyovers as well as ambient backgrounds become truly enveloping. DTS:X objects enable audio to move smoothly from one speaker to any other creating life-like realism.

DTS Neural:X

Enables an immersive audio experience for older content. DTS Neural:X can upmix your stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 content to take full advantage of all speakers in your surround sound system.

■ Audio

ALAC (Apple Lossless Audio Codec)

This is a codec for lossless audio compression method developed by Apple Inc. This codec can be played back on iTunes, iPod or iPhone. Data compressed to approximately 60 – 70 % can be decompressed to exactly the same original data.

FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality.

The FLAC license is as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

LFE

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass to the system subwoofer(s).

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the “MPEG-1” video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.

MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include “MPEG-1 Video”, “MPEG-2 Video”, “MPEG-4 Visual”, “MPEG-4 AVC”. Audio standards include “MPEG-1 Audio”, “MPEG-2 Audio”, “MPEG-4 AAC”.

WMA (Windows Media Audio)

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

Sampling frequency

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the “sampling frequency”. The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

Speaker impedance

This is an AC resistance value, indicated in Ω (ohms).

Greater power can be obtained when this value is smaller.

Dialog normalization function

This function operates automatically during playback of Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS or DTS-HD sources.

It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources.

Dynamic range

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

Downmix

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to a lower number of channels and plays back according to the system’s configuration.

■ Video

ISF

ISF (Imaging Science Foundation) is an organization that certifies video technicians who are then qualified to carry out calibration and adjustment to match the installation conditions. It also sets quality standards for the optimization of device video performance.

Progressive (sequential scanning)

This is a scanning system of the video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and jagged edges.

■ Network

AirPlay

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

DLNA

DLNA and DLNA CERTIFIED are trademarks and/or service marks of Digital Living Network Alliance. Some contents may not be compatible with other DLNA CERTIFIED® products.

vTuner

This is a free online content server for Internet Radio.

For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.

vTuner website:
http://www.radiodenon.com
This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.

WEP Key (network key)

This is key information used for encrypting data when conducting data transfer. On this unit, the same WEP key is used for data encryption and decryption, so the same WEP key must be set on both devices in order for communications to be established between them.

Wi-Fi®

Wi-Fi Certification assures tested and proven interoperability by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group certifying interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access)

This is a security standard established by the Wi-Fi Alliance. In addition to the conventional SSID (network name) and WEP key (network key), it also uses a user identification function and encrypting protocol for stronger security.

WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 2)

This is a new version of the WPA established by the Wi-Fi Alliance, compatible with more secure AES encryption.

WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK (Pre-shared Key)

This is a simple authentication system for mutual authentication when a preset character string matches on the wireless LAN access point and client.

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)

This is a standard drawn up by the Wi-Fi Alliance to ease the task of setting up wireless LAN connections and configuring security.

Network Names (SSID: Service Set Identifier)

When forming wireless LAN networks, groups are formed to prevent interference, data theft, etc. These groups are based on “SSID (network names)”. For enhanced security, a WEP key is set so that communication is unavailable unless both the “SSID” and the WEP key match. This is suitable for constructing a simplified network.

■ Others

Denon Link HD

Denon Link HD uses the clock of the AV amplifier connected by Denon Link HD to achieve HDMI signal transfer with low jitter.

HDCP

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

MAIN ZONE

The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

Pairing

Pairing (registration) is an operation that is required in order to connect a Bluetooth device to this unit using Bluetooth. When paired, the devices authenticate each other and can connect without mistaken connections occurring.
When using Bluetooth connection for the first time, you need to pair this unit and the Bluetooth device to be connected.

Protection circuit

This is a function to prevent damage to devices within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or over temperature for any reason.

Trademark information

"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

AirPlay, iPad, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.

Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey DSX® and Audyssey LFC™ are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Audio, Dolby Digital Plus, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

dts X™

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS in combination with the Symbol, DTS:X, and the DTSX logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

HDMI™
HIGH DEFINITION MULTIMEDIA INTERFACE

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

Wi Fi®
CERTIFIED

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
Wi-Fi Certification provides assurance that the device has passed the interoperability test conducted by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group that certifies interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Manufactured under license from Auro Technologies.
Auro-3D® and the related symbols are registered trademarks of Auro Technologies. All materials contained in this work are protected by copyright law and may not be reproduced, distributed, transmitted, displayed, published or broadcast without the prior written permission of Auro Technologies NV or in case of third party materials, the owner of that content. You may not alter or remove any trademark, copyright or other notice from copies of the content.

Auro Technologies: mail info@auro-technologies.com, phone +32-(0)-14314343, fax +32-(0)-14321224, www.auro-technologies.com

Specifications

■ Audio section

- **Power amplifier**

Rated output:	Front: 125 W + 125 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.) 165 W + 165 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.) Center: 125 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.) 165 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.) Surround: 125 W + 125 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.) 165 W + 165 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.) Surround back / Front wide / Height1: 125 W + 125 W (8 Ω/ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.05 % T.H.D.) 165 W + 165 W (6 Ω/ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)
Dynamic power:	130 W x 2-channel (8 Ω/ohms) 190 W x 2-channel (4 Ω/ohms)
Output connectors:	4 – 16 Ω/ohms

- **Analog**

Input sensitivity/Input impedance:	200 mV/47 kΩ/kohms
Frequency response:	10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (Direct mode)
S/N:	102 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode)
Distortion:	0.005 % (20 Hz – 20 kHz) (Direct mode)
Rated output:	1.2 V

- **Digital**

D/A output:	Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback) Total harmonic distortion — 0.008 % (1 kHz, at 0 dB) S/N ratio — 102 dB Dynamic range — 100 dB
Digital input:	Format — Digital audio interface

- **Phono equalizer**

Input sensitivity:	2.5 mV
RIAA deviation:	±1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)
S/N:	74 dB (IHF-A)
Distortion factor:	0.03 % (1 kHz, 3 V)

Video section

- **Standard video connectors**

Input/output level and impedance:	1 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms
Frequency response:	5 Hz – 10 MHz — 0, –3 dB

- **Color component video connector**

Input/output level and impedance:	Y signal — 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms P_B / C_B signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms P_R / C_R signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms
Frequency response:	5 Hz – 60 MHz — 0, –3 dB

Tuner section

	[FM]	**[AM]**
	(Note: µV at 75 Ω/ohms, 0 dBf = 1 x 10^{-15} W)	
Reception frequency range:	87.5 MHz – 107.9 MHz	520 kHz – 1710 kHz
Effective sensitivity:	1.2 µV (12.8 dBf)	18 µV
50 dB sensitivity:	MONO — 2.8 µV (20.2 dBf)	
S/N ratio:	MONO — 70 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode) STEREO — 67 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode)	
Distortion:	MONO — 0.7 % (1 kHz) STEREO — 1.0 % (1 kHz)	

■ Wireless LAN section

Network type (wireless LAN standard):	Conforming to IEEE 802.11b Conforming to IEEE 802.11g Conforming to IEEE 802.11n (Wi-Fi® compliant)*1
Security:	WEP 64 bit, WEP 128 bit WPA/WPA2-PSK (AES) WPA/WPA2-PSK (TKIP)
Radio frequency:	2.4 GHz
No. of channels:	1 – 11 ch

*1 The Wi-Fi® CERTIFIED Logo and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED On-Product Logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

■ Bluetooth section

Communications system:	Bluetooth Version 2.1 + EDR (Enhanced Data Rate)
Transmission power:	Maximum 2.5 mW (Class 2)
Maximum communication range:	Approx. 32.8 ft/10 m in line of sight*2
Frequency band:	2.4 GHz band
Modulation scheme:	FHSS (Frequency-Hopping Spread Spectrum)
Supported profiles:	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) 1.2 AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile) 1.4
Corresponding codec:	SBC, AAC
Transmission range (A2DP):	20 Hz - 20,000 Hz

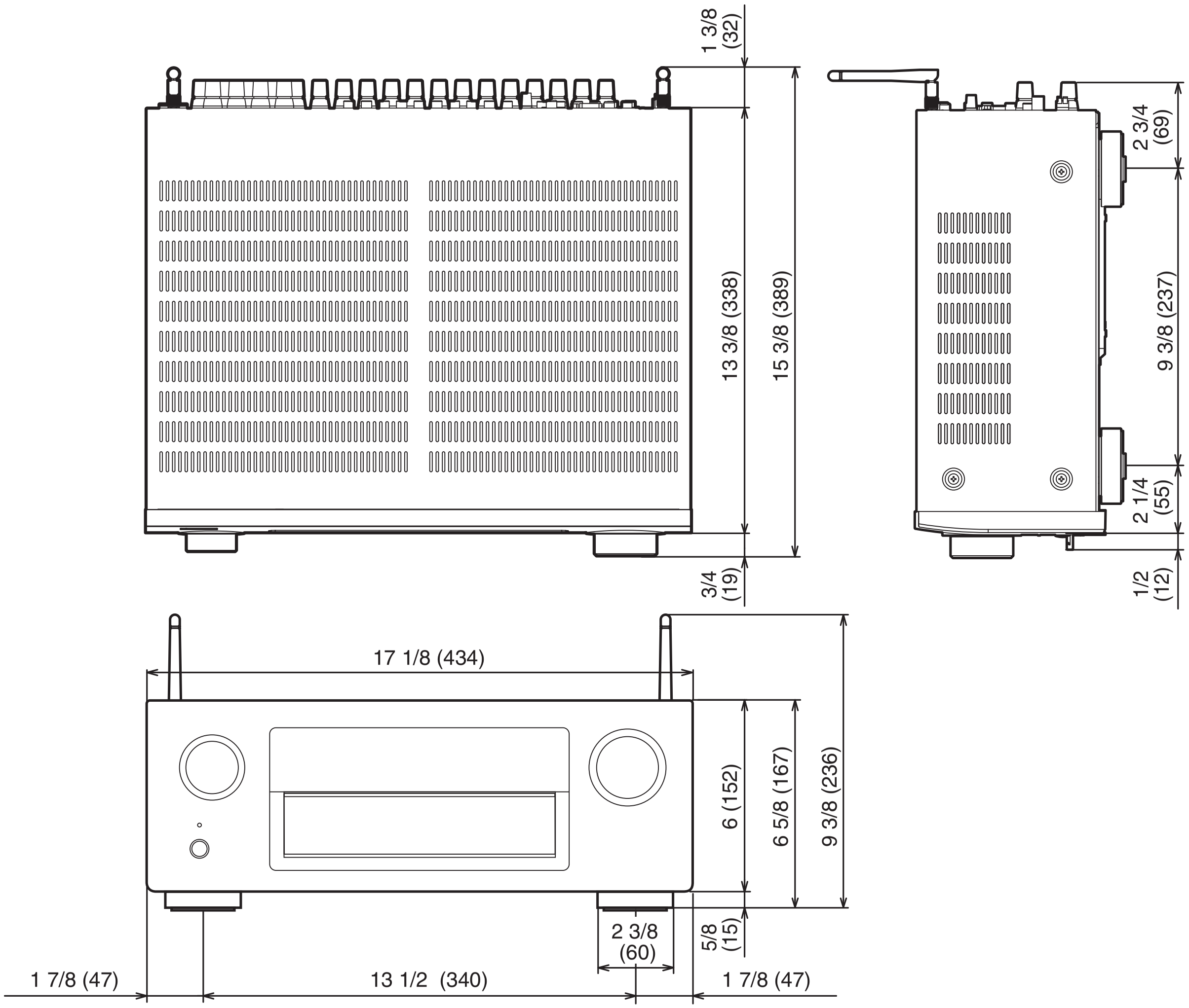
*2 The actual communication range varies depending on the influence of such factors as obstructions between devices, electromagnetic waves from microwave ovens, static electricity, cordless phones, reception sensitivity, antenna performance, operating system, application software etc.

■ General

Power supply:	AC 120 V, 60 Hz
Power consumption:	670 W
Power consumption in standby mode:	0.1 W
Power consumption in CEC standby mode:	0.5 W
Power consumption in network standby mode:	2.7 W

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.

■ Dimensions (Unit : in. (mm))


1 3/8 (32)
13 3/8 (338)
15 3/8 (389)
3/4 (19)
2 3/4 (69)
9 3/8 (237)
2 1/4 (55)
1/2 (12)
17 1/8 (434)
6 (152)
6 5/8 (167)
9 3/8 (236)
5/8 (15)
2 3/8 (60)
1 7/8 (47)
13 1/2 (340)
1 7/8 (47)

■ Weight : 27 lbs 12 oz (12.6 kg)

Index

☞ Numerics

3D 301
4K 301
5.1-channel 39, 48
7.1-channel 38, 49
9.1-channel 38, 54

☞ A

AirPlay 131
All Zone Stereo 145
Audio formats 303, 306, 308, 309
Audio settings 178, 185
Audyssey DSX® 320
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® 320
Audyssey Dynamic Volume® 321
Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 321
Audyssey settings 194, 222
Audyssey® Setup 220
Auto sound mode 154
Auto Standby 260

☞ B

Bi-amp 64
Bluetooth device 101
Blu-ray Disc player 76, 91

☞ C

Cable TV 75

☞ D

Denon Link HD 329
Direct sound mode 155
Display 22
DLNA 327
Dolby Atmos 322
Dolby sound mode 150, 322
DTS sound mode 151, 323
DVD player 76, 91

☞ E

ECO Mode 258
External control device 86

☞ F

Favorites 137, 138
Firmware Update 266
FM/AM antenna 82, 106
Front panel 18

☞ G

Game console 78
General settings 180, 258

☞ H

HDCP 303
HDMI Control 161, 205

☞ I

Input Assign 215
Input settings 179, 215
Input signal 316
Input source 90
Inputting characters 182
Internet Radio 113
iPod 80, 92
iPod Browse Mode 94

☞ J

JPEG 97, 117

☞ L

Listening position 220

☞ M

Menu map 178
Muting 91

☞ N

NAS 117
Network settings 249

☞ O

Original sound mode 154

☞ P

Pairing 101, 103
Pandora® 121
PC 117
PCM multi-channel sound mode 153
Picture Mode 201
Protection circuit 329
Pure direct 148

☞ Q

Quick select plus 166

☞ R

Random playback 96, 136
Rear panel 24
Remote control unit 28
Repeat playback 96, 136
Resetting factory settings 300
Restorer 192

☞ S

Satellite tuner 75
Set-top box 75
Setup Assistant 180
SiriusXM 128
Sleep timer 164
Slideshow 139
Sound mode 147, 310, 312
Speaker connection 32
Speaker settings 179, 220
Spotify 134
Stereo sound mode 155

☞ T

Text Search 138
Tips 280
Troubleshooting 282
TV 71, 72, 73

☞ U

USB memory device 80, 97

☞ V

Video camcorder 78
Video Conversion 210, 304
Video Select 143
Video settings 178, 201
Volume 91, 141

☞ W

Web control 169
Wi-Fi settings 250
Wired LAN 84, 250

☞ Z

ZONE2/ZONE3 .... 67, 171

License

This section describes software license used for this unit.
To maintain the correct content, the original (English) is used.

■ Boost

http://www.boost.org/

Boost Software License – Version 1.0 – August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the “Software”) to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following:

The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

■ Expat

http://www.jclark.com/xml/expat.html

Expat License. Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

■ FastDelegate

http://www.codeproject.com/KB/cpp/FastDelegate.aspx

THE WORK (AS DEFINED BELOW) IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS CODE PROJECT OPEN LICENSE (“LICENSE”). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HEREIN, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. THE AUTHOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HEREIN IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ACCEPT AND BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, YOU CANNOT MAKE ANY USE OF THE WORK.

Definitions. “Articles” means, collectively, all articles written by Author which describes how the Source Code and Executable Files for the Work may be used by a user.

“Author” means the individual or entity that offers the Work under the terms of this License.

“Derivative Work” means a work based upon the Work or upon the Work and other pre-existing works.

“Executable Files” refer to the executables, binary files, configuration and any required data files included in the Work.

“Publisher” means the provider of the website, magazine, CD-ROM, DVD or other medium from or by which the Work is obtained by You.

“Source Code” refers to the collection of source code and configuration files used to create the Executable Files.

“Standard Version” refers to such a Work if it has not been modified, or has been modified in accordance with the consent of the Author, such consent being in the full discretion of the Author.

“Work” refers to the collection of files distributed by the Publisher, including the Source Code, Executable Files, binaries, data files, documentation, whitepapers and the Articles.

“You” is you, an individual or entity wishing to use the Work and exercise your rights under this License.

Fair Use/Fair Use Rights. Nothing in this License is intended to reduce, limit, or restrict any rights arising from fair use, fair dealing, first sale or other limitations on the exclusive rights of the copyright owner under copyright law or other applicable laws.

License Grant. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, the Author hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright) license to exercise the rights in the Work as stated below: You may use the standard version of the Source Code or Executable Files in Your own applications.

You may apply bug fixes, portability fixes and other modifications obtained from the Public Domain or from the Author. A Work modified in such a way shall still be considered the standard version and will be subject to this License.

You may otherwise modify Your copy of this Work (excluding the Articles) in any way to create a Derivative Work, provided that You insert a prominent notice in each changed file stating how, when and where You changed that file.

You may distribute the standard version of the Executable Files and Source Code or Derivative Work in aggregate with other (possibly commercial) programs as part of a larger (possibly commercial) software distribution.

The Articles discussing the Work published in any form by the author may not be distributed or republished without the Author’s consent. The author retains copyright to any such Articles. You may use the Executable Files and Source Code pursuant to this License but you may not repost or republish or otherwise distribute or make available the Articles, without the prior written consent of the Author.

Any subroutines or modules supplied by You and linked into the Source Code or Executable Files this Work shall not be considered part of this Work and will not be subject to the terms of this License.

Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Author hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, import, and otherwise transfer the Work.

Restrictions. The license granted in Section 3 above is expressly made subject to and limited by the following restrictions: You agree not to remove any of the original copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices and associated disclaimers that may appear in the Source Code or Executable Files.

You agree not to advertise or in any way imply that this Work is a product of Your own.

The name of the Author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from the Work without the prior written consent of the Author.

You agree not to sell, lease, or rent any part of the Work. This does not restrict you from including the Work or any part of the Work inside a larger software distribution that itself is being sold. The Work by itself, though, cannot be sold, leased or rented.

You may distribute the Executable Files and Source Code only under the terms of this License, and You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License with every copy of the Executable Files or Source Code You distribute and ensure that anyone receiving such Executable Files and Source Code agrees that the terms of this License apply to such Executable Files and/or Source Code. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Work that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder. You may not sublicense the Work. You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute the Executable Files or Source Code with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License.

You agree not to use the Work for illegal, immoral or improper purposes, or on pages containing illegal, immoral or improper material. The Work is subject to applicable export laws. You agree to comply with all such laws and regulations that may apply to the Work after Your receipt of the Work.

Representations, Warranties and Disclaimer. THIS WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS", "WHERE IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OR GUARANTEES. YOU, THE USER, ASSUME ALL RISK IN ITS USE, INCLUDING COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, PATENT INFRINGEMENT, SUITABILITY, ETC. AUTHOR EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, MERCHANTABLE QUALITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, OR THAT THE WORK (OR ANY PORTION THEREOF) IS CORRECT, USEFUL, BUG-FREE OR FREE OF VIRUSES. YOU MUST PASS THIS DISCLAIMER ON WHENEVER YOU DISTRIBUTE THE WORK OR DERIVATIVE WORKS.

Indemnity. You agree to defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Author and the Publisher from and against any claims, suits, losses, damages, liabilities, costs, and expenses (including reasonable legal or attorneys' fees) resulting from or relating to any use of the Work by You.

Limitation on Liability. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER BE LIABLE TO YOU ON ANY LEGAL THEORY FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS LICENSE OR THE USE OF THE WORK OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Termination.

This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically upon any breach by You of any term of this License. Individuals or entities who have received Derivative Works from You under this License, however, will not have their licenses terminated provided such individuals or entities remain in full compliance with those licenses. Sections 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11 will survive any termination of this License.

If You bring a copyright, trademark, patent or any other infringement claim against any contributor over infringements You claim are made by the Work, your License from such contributor to the Work ends automatically.

Subject to the above terms and conditions, this License is perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright in the Work). Notwithstanding the above, the Author reserves the right to release the Work under different license terms or to stop distributing the Work at any time; provided, however that any such election will not serve to withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.

Publisher. The parties hereby confirm that the Publisher shall not, under any circumstances, be responsible for and shall not have any liability in respect of the subject matter of this License. The Publisher makes no warranty whatsoever in connection with the Work and shall not be liable to You or any party on any legal theory for any damages whatsoever, including without limitation any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising in connection to this license. The Publisher reserves the right to cease making the Work available to You at any time without notice

Miscellaneous

This License shall be governed by the laws of the location of the head office of the Author or if the Author is an individual, the laws of location of the principal place of residence of the Author.

If any provision of this License is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this License, and without further action by the parties to this License, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.

No term or provision of this License shall be deemed waived and no breach consented to unless such waiver or consent shall be in writing and signed by the party to be charged with such waiver or consent.

This License constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Work licensed herein. There are no understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Work not specified herein. The Author shall not be bound by any additional provisions that may appear in any communication from You. This License may not be modified without the mutual written agreement of the Author and You

■ libogg

http://www.xiph.org/ogg/

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

■ libvorbis

http://www.xiph.org/vorbis/

Copyright (c) 2002-2004 Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

■ Tremolo

http://wss.co.uk/pinknoise/tremolo

Copyright (C) 2002 – 2009 Xiph.org Foundation Changes Copyright (C) 2009 – 2010 Robin Watts for Pinknoise Productions Ltd

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

■ Tremor

http://wiki.xiph.org/index.php/Tremor

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

■ Mersenne Twister

http://www.math.sci.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/~m-mat/MT/MT2002/CODES/mt19937ar.c

Copyright (C) 1997 – 2002, Makoto Matsumoto and Takuji Nishimura,
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

The names of its contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

■ zlib

http://www.zlib.net/

zlib.h -- interface of the “zlib” general purpose compression library version 1.2.3, July 18th, 2005

Copyright (C) 1995 – 2004 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

This software is provided “as-is”, without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.

Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly jloup@gzip.org, Mark Adler madler@alumni.caltech.edu

■ cURL

http://curl.haxx.se

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 – 2011, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

■ c-ares

http://c-ares.haxx.se

Copyright 1998 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of M.I.T. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. M.I.T. makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided “as is” without express or implied warranty.

■ License information for the software used in the unit

About GPL (GNU-General Public License), LGPL (GNU Lesser General Public License) License

This product uses GPL/LGPL software and software made by other companies.

After you purchase this product, you may procure, modify or distribute the source code of the GPL/LGPL software that is used in the product.

Denon provides the source code based on the GPL and LPGL licenses at the actual cost upon your request to our customer service center.

However, note that we make no guarantees concerning the source code.

Please also understand that we do not offer support for the contents of the source code.

DENON®

www.denon.com

3520 10406 00ADA

Copyright © 2015 D&M Holdings Inc. All Rights Reserved.